



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

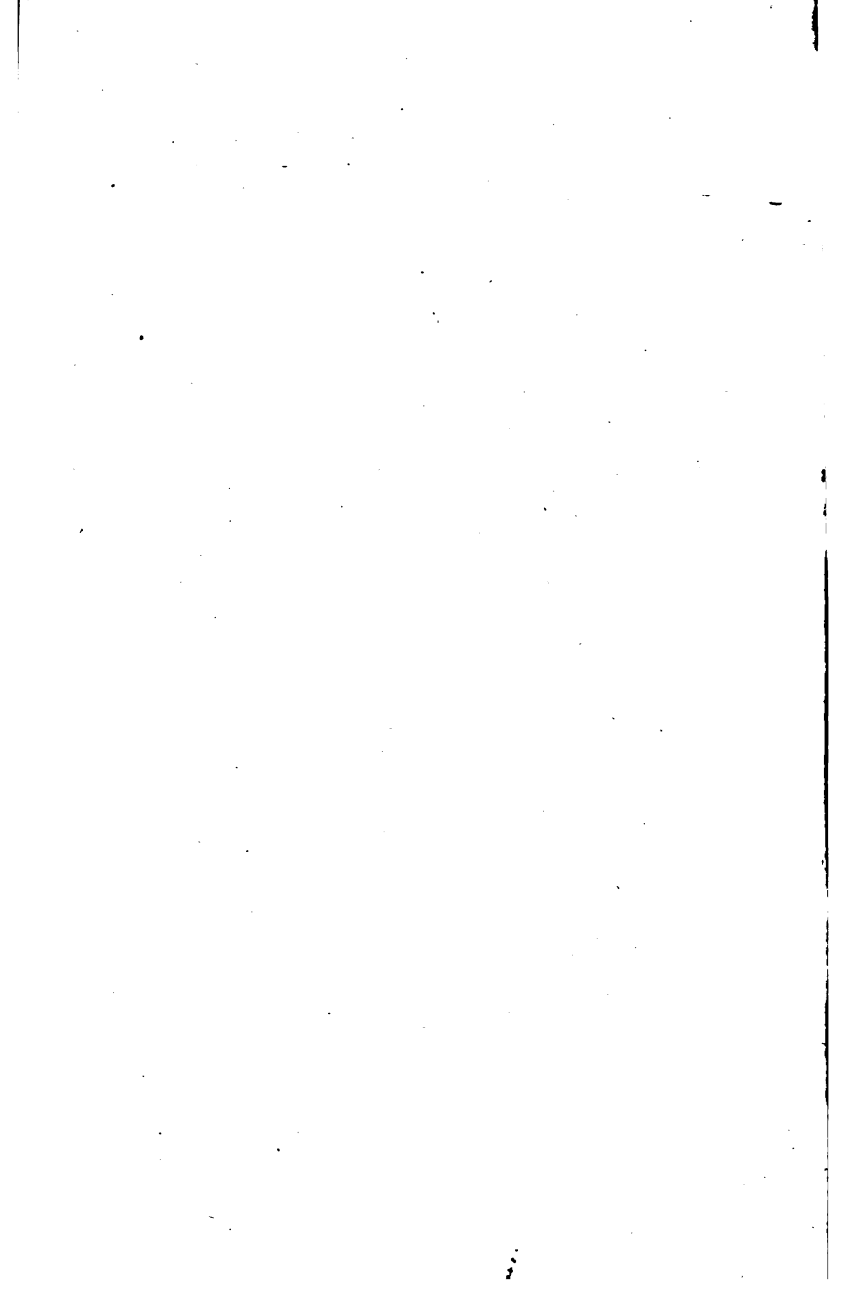
HARVARD COLLEGE  
LIBRARY

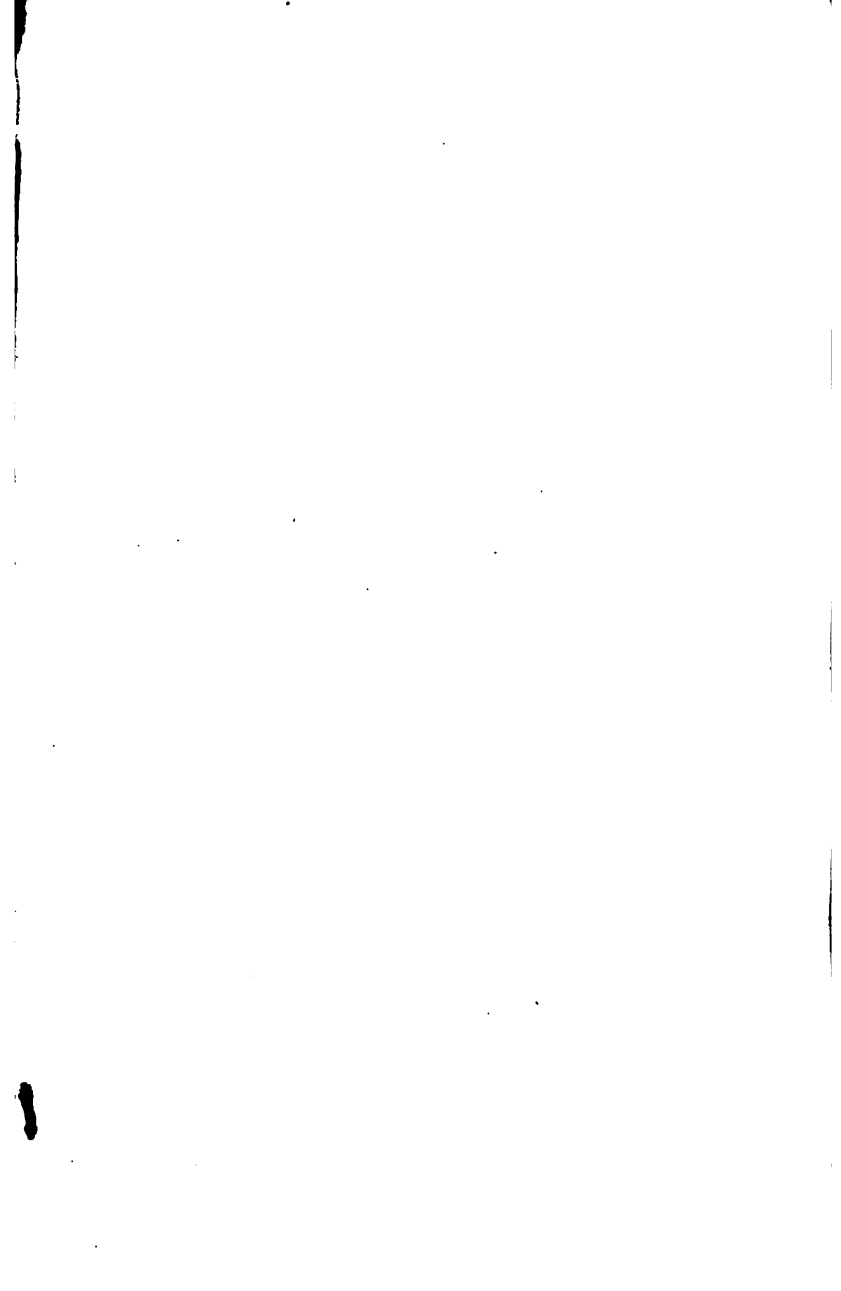


GIFT OF THE  
GRADUATE SCHOOL  
OF EDUCATION



3 2044 097 058 036







CHASE & STUART'S CLASSICAL SERIES.

---

A

# FIRST LATIN BOOK.

WITH

EXERCISES ON THE INFLECTIONS AND THE  
PRINCIPAL RULES OF SYNTAX.

ALSO

*SPECIAL AND GENERAL VOCABULARIES  
AND NOTES.*

BY

GEORGE STUART, A.M.,

PROFESSOR OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE IN THE CENTRAL HIGH SCHOOL OF PHILADELPHIA,  
MEMBER OF THE AMERICAN PHILOSOPHICAL SOCIETY.



PHILADELPHIA:  
ELDREDGE & BROTHER,  
No. 17 North Seventh Street.  
1882.

Edye T 918.82,805

# CHASE & STUART'S CLASSICAL SERIES

— COMPRISES —

A FIRST LATIN BOOK,  
A LATIN GRAMMAR,  
A LATIN READER,

*And Editions of all the Latin Authors  
usually read in Schools.*

MASSACHUSETTS COLLEGE LIBRARY  
DIVISION OF THE  
GRADUATE SCHOOL OF EDUCATION

28 May 29

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1882, by  
ELDREDGE & BROTHER,  
In the Office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington.

J. FAGAN & SON,  
ELECTROTYPERS, PHILAD'A.







**T**HIS book is intended to be complete in itself, and to give the beginner in Latin sufficient exercise in the inflections and the principal rules of syntax. Special vocabularies accompany the exercises, and complete vocabularies of all the words used in them are given at the end of the book.

The usual classification according to stems has been given, but the subject is not enforced. Some use has been made of the base, which, if less philosophical, is far more intelligible to young students.

In the syntax, it was deemed best to make no distinction between clauses of pure purpose and result and substantive clauses of the same character.

The quantity of all syllables not determined by the general rules of quantity is marked in the usual way.

It may be remarked that every Latin phrase or sentence in the book is either taken directly from a Latin author, or is based upon good classical usage.

The Latin Grammar and the Latin Reader of this series are designed to follow immediately the First Latin Book.

GEORGE STUART.

CENTRAL HIGH SCHOOL,  
Philadelphia, May 31, 1882.





	PAGE
THE ALPHABET—PRONUNCIATION . . . . .	7
SYLLABLES—GENERAL RULES OF QUANTITY . . . . .	9
ACCENTUATION—GENDER—CASES . . . . .	10
DECLENSION—THE STEM—FIRST DECLENSION—EXERCISES . . . . .	11
SECOND DECLENSION—EXERCISES . . . . .	13
THIRD DECLENSION—EXERCISES . . . . .	15
FOURTH DECLENSION—EXERCISES . . . . .	23
FIFTH DECLENSION—EXERCISES—COMPOUND NOUNS . . . . .	24
DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES—EXERCISES—COMPARISON— EXERCISES . . . . .	26
NUMERALS . . . . .	33
DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS—EXERCISES . . . . .	37
VERBS—CONJUGATION OF SUM—EXERCISES . . . . .	44
FIRST CONJUGATION—EXERCISES . . . . .	49
SECOND CONJUGATION—EXERCISES . . . . .	58
THIRD CONJUGATION—EXERCISES . . . . .	65
FOURTH CONJUGATION—EXERCISES . . . . .	76
DEPONENT VERBS . . . . .	83
SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS—PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS . . . . .	86
CONJUGATION OF IRREGULAR VERBS—EXERCISES . . . . .	88

## SYNTAX.

QUESTIONS—EXERCISES . . . . .	100
AGREEMENT—ADJECTIVES, APPPOSITION, PREDICATE NOUNS, RELATIVE PRONOUNS, THE REFLEXIVES, EXERCISES . . . . .	101
THE CASES—NOMINATIVE, VOCATIVE, ACCUSATIVE—EXER- CISES . . . . .	106

	PAGE
TWO ACCUSATIVES, ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE, TERMINAL ACCUSATIVE—EXERCISES . . . . .	107
THE DATIVE—WITH ADJECTIVES, OF INDIRECT OBJECT, OF POSSESSOR, WITH COMPOUND VERBS, OF AGENT, TWO DATIVES—EXERCISES . . . . .	111
THE GENITIVE — ADNOMINAL, PARTITIVE, OF QUALITY, WITH ADJECTIVES, AS PREDICATE, WITH VERBS—EXERCISES . . . . .	118
THE ABLATIVE—OF CAUSE, ETC., WITH COMPARATIVES, OF TIME, OF QUALITY, OF VOLUNTARY AGENT, OF SPECIFICATION, OF SEPARATION, OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE, OF SOURCE, OF PRICE, ABSOLUTE, WITH VERBS, WITH OPUS AND USUS—EXERCISES . . . . .	125
PLACE—WHERE, WHENCE, AND WHITHER—EXERCISES . . . . .	138
THE INFINITIVE MOOD . . . . .	140
INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE—TENSES—EXERCISES . . . . .	141
THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE—EXERCISES . . . . .	146
SEQUENCE OF TENSES—SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE—EXERCISES . . . . .	148
SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE WITH QUI—EXERCISES . . . . .	150
SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT—EXERCISES . . . . .	152
SUBJUNCTIVE OF INDIRECT QUESTION—EXERCISES . . . . .	153
SUBJUNCTIVE WITH CUM TEMPORAL—EXERCISES . . . . .	155
SUBJUNCTIVE WITH CUM CAUSAL AND CONCESSIVE—EXERCISES . . . . .	157
SUBJUNCTIVE OF CAUSE WITH QUI—EXERCISES . . . . .	158
SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONDITIONAL SENTENCES—EXERCISES . . . . .	159
ORATIO OBLIQUA OR INDIRECT DISCOURSE—EXERCISES . . . . .	161
THE GERUND—EXERCISES . . . . .	163
THE GERUNDIVE—EXERCISES . . . . .	164
THE SUPINES—EXERCISES . . . . .	166
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY . . . . .	169
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY . . . . .	189





# FIRST LATIN BOOK.



## THE ALPHABET.

1. THE Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that it has no W.

The vowels are **a, e, i, o, u, y**. The remaining letters are called consonants.

The mutes are **b, c, d, g, k, p, q, t**.

The liquids are **l, m, n, r**.

The diphthongs are **ae, oe, au, ei, eu, ui**.

Vowels may be long, short, or common; and are thus marked:

long,	<b>ā,</b>	<b>ē,</b>	<b>ī,</b>	<b>ō,</b>	<b>ū;</b>
short,	<b>ă,</b>	<b>ĕ,</b>	<b>ĭ,</b>	<b>ŏ,</b>	<b>ŭ;</b>
common,	<b>ǣ,</b>	<b>ĕ,</b>	<b>ĭ,</b>	<b>ŏ,</b>	<b>ŭ.</b>

**ǣ** means that the **a** is sometimes long, and sometimes short.

## PRONUNCIATION.

2. Three different methods of pronouncing Latin are in use in this country: the Roman or Phonetic, the Continental, and the English.

### *THE ROMAN METHOD.*

3. By the Roman method the sound of each letter is always the same.

## Sounds of the Vowels.

**ā** = *a* in *father*;**ǣ** = *a* in *dogma*.**ē** = *e* in *they*;**ǿ** = *e* in *set*.**ī** = *i* in *machine*;**ȳ** = *i* in *sit*.**ō** = *o* in *tone*;**ȝ** = *o* in *domestic*.**ū** = *u* in *rude*;**ŭ** = *u* in *full*.

**y** has the sound of French *u*. In practice it will be found more convenient to give it the sound of *i*, long or short.

## Sounds of the Diphthongs.

**æ** = *ai* in *aisle*.**ei** = *ei* in *eight*.**œ** = *oi* in *spoil*.**eu** = *eu* in *feud*.**au** = *ow* in *owl*.**ui** = *we* in *we*.

## Sounds of the Consonants.

**c** is always hard, as in *can*.**g** is always hard, as in *get*.**j** is like *y* in *year*.**s** is always sharp, as in *sea*.**t** is always a pure dental, as in *tin*.

**v** is like *v* or *w*. Its sound was probably between that of *v* and *w*.

**gu** and **su**, when making one syllable with the following vowel, like *gw*, *sw*; as in *lingua*, *suavis*.

**qu** is sounded as *qu* in English.**bs** is sounded as *ps* in English.**ch** has the sound of *k*.

The letters not named are sounded as in English.

## THE CONTINENTAL METHOD.

4. In the continental method the vowels are pronounced as in the Roman method, and the consonants as in English; except that **c** and **t**, when the accent immediately precedes, and *i* with another vowel follows, are sounded like *s* pure

and *t* hard respectively, and not like *sh*; as, *dediticus* = *deditis-i-us*.

### THE ENGLISH METHOD.

5. In the English method the letters have the same sound as in English, and Latin words are pronounced according to the rules of English pronunciation; but every Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs.

Final *a* is sounded like final *a* in *America*; *ae* and *oe* like *e*; *au* like *au* in *author*; *eu* like *eu* in *neuter*; *ei* and *ui* like *i* in *kite*; *es* at the end of a word like the English word *ease*; *os* at the end of plural cases like *ose* in *dose*; *ch* like *k*; *ti*, when followed by a vowel, like *sh*, if the accent is on the preceding syllable; but the hard sound is retained after *s*, *t*, and *x*, and when the accent is on the *i*; *c* and *g* are soft before *e*, *ae*, *oe*, *eu*, *i*, and *y*.

### SYLLABLES.

6. Every Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs.

### GENERAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

7. The following rules for quantity are intended to aid the student in applying the rules for accentuation:

1. A vowel before another or *h* is short; as, *dĕs*, *trĕho*.
2. A vowel before a diphthong is short; as, *vĭae*.
3. All diphthongs are long; as, *ĕstĭmo*.
4. A vowel before two consonants, a double consonant (*x*, *z*), or *j*, is long by position; as, *tĕrra*, *pĕjor*, *gāza*, *dŭx*.
5. A vowel naturally short, followed by a mute with *l* or *r*, is common; as, *alĕcris*, *pĕtris*.

**Note.**—In this book, the quantity of all syllables not determined by the preceding rules is marked in the usual way; excepting final sylla-

bles, which are marked **only** when they are long. Thus, in *āmicus*, the absence of any mark over the *u* indicates that this vowel is short; and in *insūla*, the *i* is long by position, while the absence of any mark over the *a* shows that it is short.

## ACCENTUATION.

8. The place of the accent in Latin words is determined by the following rules:

1. In words of **two syllables** the accent is always on the first syllable; as, *hómo*, *ménsa*.

2. In words of **three or more syllables**, if the penult is long, it is accented; if the penult is short or common, the accent is on the antepenult; as, *amícus*, *dómīnus*, *ténēbrae*.

**Note.**—The penult is the last syllable but one; the antepenult is the syllable before the penult.

## GENDER.

9. Latin nouns are of three genders; **masculine** (*m.*), **feminine** (*f.*), and **neuter** (*n.*).

### GENERAL RULES OF GENDER.

1. The following are masculine:

Names of **males**, **rivers**, **winds**, and **months**.

2. The following are feminine:

Names of **females**, **countries**, **towns**, **islands**, and **trees**.

3. The following are neuter:

Indeclinable nouns, other parts of speech and sentences or phrases used as nouns, and the produce of trees.

Some exceptions to these rules occur.

## CASES.

10. Latin nouns have six cases: Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative.



Their meaning and use will be best learned in connection with the declensions, and by practice.

**Note.**—A seventh case, the Locative, denoting the *place in which*, is still found in a few words.

## DECLENSION.

11. Latin nouns have five declensions, distinguished by the ending of the genitive singular or plural, thus:

DECLENSION.	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
GEN. SING.	ae	ī	īs	ūs	ēi
GEN. PLUR.	ārum	ōrum	um or ūm	ūm	ērūm

1. In neuters the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular are always alike, and the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural are alike and end in *ā*.

2. The nominative and vocative of Latin words are always alike, except in the singular of words in *us* of the second declension.

3. The dative and ablative plural are always alike.

## THE STEM.

12. The **stem** of a word is that part to which the endings of declension and conjugation are attached. The final vowel of the stem sometimes disappears when combined with the endings of inflection.

1. That part of a word which remains unchanged by inflection is called the **base**. The endings of declension and conjugation are added to the base.

## THE FIRST DECLENSION.

13. Nouns of the first declension end in *ā* and *ē*, feminine; *ās* and *ēs*, masculine. Nouns in *ē*, *ās*, and *ēs* are mostly Greek words or proper names. Those in *ā* are thus declined:

## Singular.

- ( NOM. *mensa*, a table.  
 GEN. *mensae*, of a table.  
 DAT. *mensae*, to or for a table.  
 ( ACC. *mensam*, a table.  
 VOC. *mensa*, O table, or thou table.  
 ABL. *mensā*, with, from, in, or by a table.

## Plural.

- NOM. *mensae*, tables.  
 GEN. *mensārum*, of tables.  
 DAT. *mensīs*, to or for tables.  
 ACC. *mensās*, tables.  
 VOC. *mensae*, O tables, or ye tables.  
 ABL. *mensīs*, with, from, in, or by tables.

**Note 1.**—The base of *mensa* is *mens*, and to this the case endings are added.

**Note 2.**—The stem of *mensa* is *mensa*; for the disappearance of a in the dative and ablative plural, see 12.

**Note 3.**—As there is no article in Latin, *mensa* may mean *table*, *a table*, or *the table*, according to the sense required.

In like manner decline the nouns in the following vocabulary:

## VOCABULARY.

*silva*, ae, f., a wood, forest.  
*insŭla*, ae, f., an island.  
*stella*, ae, f., a star.  
*Rōma*, ae, f., Rome.  
*puella*, ae, f., a girl.  
*musca*, ae, f., a fly.  
*āquīla*, ae, f., an eagle.

*āqua*, ae, f., water.  
*via*, ae, f., a way, road.  
*rāna*, ae, f., a frog.  
*rīpa*, ae, f., bank (of a stream).  
*causa*, ae, f., cause, reason.  
*lacrīma*, ae, f., a tear.  
*rēgīna*, ae, f., a queen.

**Note.**—In translating the following exercise, give all the possible meanings of each form. For example, *insŭlae* may be gen. or dat. singular, or nom. or voc. plural: *of an island*, *to or for an island*, *islands*, or *O islands*.

I. *Translate into English :*

1. Silvārum, insŭlae, āquā. 2. Āquŭlam, muscīs, viās.  
 3. Puellāe, Rōmam, stellās. 4. Rānārum, viīs, rīpā. 5.  
 Rēgīnīs, lacrimās, causa. 6. Puellās, rīpam, viā.

II. *Translate into Latin :*

1. With water, ye islands, of Rome. 2. Of stars, to girls,  
 for flies. 3. By an eagle, of a frog, with woods. 4. To a  
 queen, a cause (*nom. and acc.*), tears. 5. By a way, of the  
 bank. 6. O queen, with flies, ye stars.

Question 1.—Is the first *a* of *lacrima* long, short, or common? (See 7, 5.)

2.—Why is the *u* in *puella* short? (See 7, 1.)

## THE SECOND DECLENSION.

14. Nouns of the second declension end in *ēr*, *ŭr*, *ūs*, *os*, masculine; *ŭm*, *on*, neuter. Those in *os* and *on* are chiefly Greek words or proper names. The others are thus declined: *dōmīnus*, a lord; *puer*, a boy; *āger*, a field; *vīr*, a man; *bellum*, war.

Singular.	Plural.
NOM. <i>dōmīnus</i> , a lord.	<i>dōmīnī</i> , lords.
GEN. <i>dōmīnī</i> , of a lord.	<i>dōmīnōrum</i> , of lords.
DAT. <i>dōmīnō</i> , to or for a lord.	<i>dōmīnīs</i> , to or for lords.
ACC. <i>dōmīnum</i> , a lord.	<i>dōmīnōs</i> , lords.
VOC. <i>dōmīne</i> , O lord.	<i>dōmīnī</i> , O lords.
ABL. <i>dōmīnō</i> , with, from, in, or by a lord.	<i>dōmīnīs</i> , with, from, in, or by lords.

Singular.			
NOM. <i>puer</i> ,	<i>ager</i> ,	<i>vir</i> ,	<i>bellum</i> ,
GEN. <i>puērī</i> ,	<i>agrī</i> ,	<i>vīrī</i> ,	<i>bellī</i> ,
DAT. <i>puērō</i> ,	<i>agrō</i> ,	<i>vīrō</i> ,	<i>bellō</i> ,
ACC. <i>puerum</i> ,	<i>agrum</i> ,	<i>vīrum</i> ,	<i>bellum</i> ,
VOC. <i>puer</i> ,	<i>ager</i> ,	<i>vir</i> ,	<i>bellum</i> ,
ABL. <i>puērō</i> .	<i>agrō</i> .	<i>vīrō</i> .	<i>bellō</i> .

## Plural.

NOM. puērī,	agrī,	vīrī,	bella,
GEN. puērōrum,	agrōrum,	vīrōrum,	bellōrum,
DAT. puērīs,	agrīs,	vīrīs,	bellīs,
ACC. puērōs,	agrōs,	vīrōs,	bella,
VOC. puērī,	agrī,	vīrī,	bella,
ABL. puērīs.	agrīs.	vīrīs.	bellīs.

**Note 1.**—The bases are *domin*, *puer*, *agr*, *vir*, and *bell*; to these the case endings are added.

**Note 2.**—The stem of nouns of this declension ends in *-o*, as it appears in the older form *servos* for *servus*.

**Question 1.**—How is the vowel *e* in *bellum* shown to be long? (See 7, 4.)

**2.**—How is the vowel *u* in *puer* known to be short? (See 7, 1.)

**3.**—Which syllable of *puērōrum* is accented? (See 8, 2.)

**Note 3.**—Proper names in *-ius* contract the vocative into *ī*; as, *Horatī*, *Vergilī*; from *Horatius*, *Vergilius*. *Fīlius*, a son, also has voc. *fīlī*.

**Note 4.**—For additional practice select words from the following vocabulary, in learning which be careful to fix in the mind the nominative and the genitive singular and the gender of each noun.

## VOCABULARY.

*annus*, ī, *m.*, a year.  
*hortus*, ī, *m.*, a garden.  
*gēner*, ěrī, *m.*, a son-in-law.  
*ĕquus*, ī, *m.*, a horse.  
*dōmīnus*, ī, *m.*, a master, lord.  
*lŭpus*, ī, *m.*, a wolf.  
*āmīcus*, ī, *m.*, a friend.  
*sōcer*, ěrī, *m.*, a father-in-law.

*templum*, ī, *n.*, a temple.  
*regnum*, ī, *n.*, a kingdom.  
*fāber*, brī, *m.*, an artisan.  
*vīnum*, ī, *n.*, wine.  
*glōria*, ae, *f.*, glory.  
*lingua*, ae, *f.*, a tongue, language.  
*āmīcītia*, ae, *f.*, friendship.  
*āvus*, ī, *m.*, a grandfather.

## I. Translate into English:

1. *Lŭpōs*, *āmīcōrum*, *fabrī*, *regnī*. 2. *Linguae*, *bellīs*, *āmīcītiarum*, *linguās*. 3. *Sōcērō*, *glōriam*, *gēnērōs*, *regna*.  
 4. *Hortum*, *vīnī*, *ĕquīs*, *āve*. 5. *Annō*, *linguā*, *bellōrum*, *gēnērū*. 6. *Lŭpī*, *fabrīs*, *ĕquōrum*, *sōcer*.

II. *Translate into Latin :*

1. Of grandfathers, ye masters, wars, of languages. 2. For a kingdom, friendships, of artisans, with gardens. 3. By a wolf, to horses, a year, of glory. 4. To a son-in-law, with wine, of wolves, of a kingdom. 5. To wars, for friends, wine, O years. 6. To artisans, a master, in friendship, of gardens.

III. *Deus, a god, is thus declined :*

Singular.	Plural.
NOM. deus,	deī, diī, dī,
GEN. deī,	deōrum,
DAT. deō,	deīs, diīs, dīs,
ACC. deum,	deōs,
VOC. deus,	deī, diī, dī,
ABL. deō.	deīs, diīs, dīs.

## THE THIRD DECLENSION.

15. Nouns of the third declension are of two classes :

1. Nouns whose stem ends in a consonant ;
2. Nouns whose stem ends in i.

**Note 1.**—In the first class the final stem consonant is always preceded by a vowel, generally short.

**Note 2.**—Most i stems have the syllable preceding the i long.

## CONSONANT NOUNS.

**Jūdex, m., a judge.**

Singular.

NOM. jūdex,\* a judge.

GEN. jūdicis, of a judge.

DAT. jūdicī, to or for a judge.

ACC. jūdicem, a judge.

VOC. jūdex, thou judge, O judge.

ABL. jūdīce, with, from, in, or by a judge.

---

\* x stands for cs.

## Plural.

NOM. *jūdicēs*, *judges*.GEN. *jūdicum*, *of judges*.DAT. *jūdicibus*, *to or for judges*.ACC. *jūdicēs*, *judges*.VOC. *jūdicēs*, *O judges, ye judges*.ABL. *jūdicibus*, *with, from, in, or by judges*.

**Note.**—The base is *judic*, and to this the case endings are added. The base is found by removing *is* from the genitive singular.

**Rex**, m.,  
*a king.*

**Aetās**, f.,  
*age.*

**Cōmes**, m. or f.,  
*a companion.*

## Singular.

NOM. *rex*,GEN. *rēgis*,DAT. *rēgī*,ACC. *rēgem*,VOC. *rēx*,ABL. *rēge*.

aetās,

aetātis,

aetātī,

aetātem,

aetās,

aetāte.

cōmes,

cōmītis,

cōmītī,

cōmitem,

cōmes,

cōmīte.

## Plural.

NOM. *rēgēs*,GEN. *rēgum*,DAT. *rēgibus*,ACC. *rēgēs*,VOC. *rēgēs*,ABL. *rēgibus*.

aetātēs,

aetātum (ium),

aetātibus,

aetātēs,

aetātēs,

aetātibus.

cōmītēs,

cōmītum,

cōmītibus,

cōmītēs,

cōmītēs,

cōmītibus.

**Pēs**, m.,  
*a foot.*

**Princeps**, m. or f.,  
*a chief.*

**Leō**, m.,  
*a lion.*

## Singular.

NOM. *pēs*,GEN. *pēdis*,DAT. *pēdī*,ACC. *pēdem*,VOC. *pēs*,ABL. *pēde*.

princeps,

principis,

principī,

principem,

princeps,

principē.

leō,

leōnis,

leōnī,

leōnem,

leō,

leōne.

	<b>Plural.</b>	
NOM. pēdēs,	princīpēs,	leōnēs,
GEN. pēdum,	princīpum,	leōnum,
DAT. pēdībus,	princīpībus,	leōnībus,
ACC. pēdēs,	princīpēs,	leōnēs,
VOC. pēdēs,	princīpēs,	leōnēs,
ABL. pēdībus.	princīpībus.	leōnībus.

**Virgo, f.,**  
*a maiden.*

**Pāter, m.,**  
*a father.*

**Cāput, n.,**  
*a head.*

	<b>Singular.</b>	
NOM. virgō,	pāter,	cāput,
GEN. virgīnis,	pātris,	cāpītis,
DAT. virgīnī,	pātrī,	cāpītī,
ACC. virgīnem,	pātre,	cāput,
VOC. virgō,	pāter,	cāput,
ABL. virgīne.	pātre.	cāpīte.

	<b>Plural.</b>	
NOM. virgīnēs,	pātrēs,	cāpīta,
GEN. virgīnum,	pātrum,	cāpītum,
DAT. virgīnībus,	pātrībus,	cāpītībus,
ACC. virgīnēs,	pātrēs,	cāpīta,
VOC. virgīnēs,	pātrēs,	cāpīta,
ABL. virgīnībus.	pātrībus	cāpītībus.

**Nōmen, n.,**  
*a name.*

**Ōpus, n.,**  
*work.*

**Corpus, n.,**  
*a body.*

	<b>Singular.</b>	
NOM. nōmen,	ōpus,	corpus,
GEN. nōmīnis,	ōpēris,	corpōris,
DAT. nōmīnī,	ōpērī,	corpōrī,
ACC. nōmen,	ōpus,	corpus,
VOC. nōmen,	ōpus,	corpus,
ABL. nōmīne.	ōpēre.	corpore.

	Plural.	
NOM. nōmīna,	ōpēra,	corpōra,
GEN. nōminum,	ōpērum,	corpōrum,
DAT. nōminībus,	ōpērībus,	corpōrībus,
ACC. nōmīna,	ōpēra,	corpōra,
VOC. nōmīna,	ōpēra,	corpōra,
ABL. nōminībus.	ōpērībus.	corpōrībus.

**Note.**—For the sake of brevity, the declension of neuters may be given as follows:

Singular.		Plural.
NOM., ACC. & VOC. cāput,	NOM., ACC. & VOC. cāpīta,	
GEN. cāpītis,	GEN. cāpītum,	
DAT. cāpītī,	DAT. and ABL. cāpītībus.	
ABL. cāpīte.		

**Mīles, m.,**  
*a soldier.*

**Lāpis, m.,**  
*a stone.*

**Āpex, m.,**  
*a peak.*

Singular.		
NOM. mīles,	lāpis,	āpex,
GEN. mīlītis,	lāpīdis,	āpīcis,
DAT. mīlītī,	lāpīdī,	āpīcī,
ACC. mīlitem,	lāpīdem,	āpīcem,
VOC. mīles,	lāpis,	āpex,
ABL. mīlīte.	lāpīde.	āpīce.
Plural.		
NOM. mīlītēs,	lāpīdēs,	āpīcēs,
GEN. mīlitum,	lāpīdum,	āpīcum,
DAT. mīlītībus,	lāpīdībus,	āpīcībus,
ACC. mīlītēs,	lāpīdēs,	āpīcēs,
VOC. mīlītēs,	lāpīdēs,	āpīcēs,
ABL. mīlītībus.	lāpīdībus.	āpīcībus.



**Mūs, m.,**  
*a mouse.*

**Jūs, n.,**  
*right.*

**Custōs, m. or f.,**  
*a guard.*

## Singular.

NOM. mūs,  
GEN. mūrīs,  
DAT. mūrī,  
ACC. mūrem,  
VOC. mūs,  
ABL. mūre.

jūs,  
jūrīs,  
jūrī,  
jūs,  
jūs,  
jūre.

custōs,  
custōdis,  
custōdī,  
custōdem,  
custōs,  
custōde.

## Plural.

NOM. mūrēs,  
GEN. mūrīum,  
DAT. mūrībus,  
ACC. mūrēs,  
VOC. mūrēs,  
ABL. mūrībus.

jūra,  
jūrum,  
jūrībus,  
jūra,  
jūra,  
jūrībus.

custōdēs,  
custōdum,  
custōdībus,  
custōdēs,  
custōdēs,  
custōdībus.

## I. NOUNS.

**Tussis, f.,**  
*a cough.*

**Clāvis, f.,**  
*a key.*

**Imber, m.,**  
*a shower.*

## Singular.

NOM. tussis,  
GEN. tussis,  
DAT. tussī,  
ACC. tussim,  
VOC. tussis,  
ABL. tussī.

clāvis,  
clāvis,  
clāvī,  
clāvem or clāvīm,  
clāvis,  
clāve or clāvī.

imber,  
imbris,  
imbrī,  
imbrem,  
imber,  
imbre or imbrī.

## Plural.

NOM. tussēs,  
GEN. tussium,  
DAT. tussībus,  
ACC. tussēs (īs),  
VOC. tussēs,  
ABL. tussībus.

clāvēs,  
clāvium,  
clāvībus,  
clāvēs (īs),  
clāvēs,  
clāvībus.

imbrēs,  
imbrīum,  
imbrībus,  
imbrēs (īs),  
imbrēs,  
imbrībus.

**Ōvis, f.,**  
*a sheep.*

**Nūbēs, f.,**  
*a cloud.*

**Dens, m.,**  
*a tooth.*

## Singular.

NOM. ōvis,  
GEN. ōvis,  
DAT. ōvī,  
ACC. ōvem,  
VOC. ōvis,  
ABL. ōve.

nūbēs,  
nūbīs,  
nūbī,  
nūbem,  
nūbēs,  
nūbe.

dens,  
dentis,  
dentī,  
dentem,  
dens,  
dente.

## Plural.

NOM. ōvēs,  
GEN. ōvium,  
DAT. ōvībus,  
ACC. ōvēs or ōvīs,  
VOC. ōvēs,  
ABL. ōvībus.

nūbēs,  
nūbium,  
nūbībus,  
nūbēs or nūbīs,  
nūbēs,  
nūbībus.

dentēs,  
dentium,  
dentībus,  
dentēs or dentīs,  
dentēs,  
dentībus.

**Rēte, n.,**  
*a net.*

**Ānīmal, n.,**  
*an animal.*

**Māre, n.,**  
*the sea.*

## Singular.

NOM. rēte,  
GEN. rētis,  
DAT. rētī,  
ACC. rēte,  
VOC. rēte,  
ABL. rētī (e).

ānīmal,  
ānīmālis,  
ānīmālī,  
ānīmal,  
ānīmal,  
ānīmālī.

māre,  
māris,  
mārī,  
māre,  
māre,  
mārī (e).

## Plural.

NOM. rētia,  
GEN. rētium,  
DAT. rētībus,  
ACC. rētia,  
VOC. rētia,  
ABL. rētībus.

ānīmālia,  
ānīmālīum,  
ānīmālībus,  
ānīmālia,  
ānīmālia,  
ānīmālībus.

māria,  
mārium,  
mārībus,  
māria,  
māria,  
mārībus.

<b>Ōs, n.,</b> <i>a bone.</i>	<b>Urbs, f.,</b> <i>a city.</i>	<b>Hostis, m. or f.,</b> <i>an enemy.</i>
	<b>Singular.</b>	
NOM. ōs,	urbs,	hostis,
GEN. ossis,	urbis,	hostis,
DAT. ossī,	urbī,	hostī,
ACC. ōs,	urbem,	hostem,
VOC. ōs,	urbs,	hostis,
ABL. osse.	urbe.	hoste.
	<b>Plural.</b>	
NOM. ossa,	urbēs,	hostēs,
GEN. ossium,	urbium,	hostium,
DAT. ossibus,	urbibus,	hostibus,
ACC. ossa,	urbēs,	hostēs,
VOC. ossa,	urbēs,	hostēs,
ABL. ossibus.	urbibus.	hostibus.

## 16. Nouns Irregular in Declension.

<b>Nix, f.,</b> <i>snow.</i>	<b>Bōs, m. or f.,</b> <i>ox or cow.</i>	<b>Sūs, m. or f.,</b> <i>a swine.</i>
	<b>Singular.</b>	
NOM. nix,	bōs,	sūs,
GEN. nīvis,	bōvis,	sūis,
DAT. nīvī,	bōvī,	sūi,
ACC. nīvem,	bōvem,	sūem,
VOC. nix,	bōs,	sūs,
ABL. nīve.	bōve.	sūe.
	<b>Plural.</b>	
NOM. nīvēs,	bōvēs,	sūēs,
GEN. nīvium,	bōum,	sūum,
DAT. nīvībus,	bōbus or būbus,	sūībus or sūbus,
ACC. nīvēs,	bōvēs,	sūēs,
VOC. nīvēs,	bōvēs,	sūēs,
ABL. nīvībus.	bōbus or būbus.	sūībus or sūbus.

<b>Vīs, f.,</b> <i>strength.</i>	<b>Sēnex, m. or f.,</b> <i>an old man or woman.</i>	<b>Jūpīter, m.,</b> <i>Jupiter.</i>
Singular.		
NOM. vīs,	sēnex,	Jūpīter,
GEN. vīs ( <i>rare</i> ),	sēnis,	Jōvis,
DAT. vī ( <i>rare</i> ),	sēnī,	Jōvī,
ACC. vim,	sēnem,	Jōvem,
VOC. —,	sēnex,	Jūpīter,
ABL. vī.	sēne.	Jōve.
Plural.		
NOM. vīrēs,	sēnēs,	
GEN. vīrium.	sēnum,	
DAT. vīrībus,	sēnībus,	
ACC. vīrēs,	sēnēs,	
VOC. vīrēs,	sēnēs,	
ABL. vīrībus.	sēnībus.	

**Note 1.**—Not more than seven or eight common words have only -im in the accusative singular; and about as many have -em or -im.

**Note 2.**—The ablative singular ends in -i when the accusative ends in -im; in neuter nouns ending in e, al, and ar (with some exceptions), and in several other words.

**Note 3.**—For the present, the student may assume that the genitive plural ends in -um, unless he knows or is informed that it ends in -ium. Attention in reading Latin is the best guide in all these respects.

## VOCABULARY.

virtūs ūtis, *f.*, virtue.  
cīvītās, ātis, *f.*, a state.  
lex, lēgis, *f.*, a law.  
hōmo, īnis, *m.*, man.  
frāter, tris, *m.*, a brother.  
consul, ūlis, *m.*, a consul.  
flūmen, īnis, *n.*, a river.  
altitūdo, īnis, *f.*, height, depth.

lūna, ae, *f.*, the moon.  
pōpulus, i, *m.*, a people.  
pēcūnia, ae, *f.*, money.  
oppīdum, i, *n.*, a town.  
pax, pācis, *f.*, peace.  
pars,\* partis, *f.*, a part.  
mons,\* montis, *m.*, a mountain.  
cīvis,\* is, *m.* and *f.*, a citizen.

\* Gen. plur. in -ium.

I. *Translate into English :*

1. Cīvītātis, lex cīvītātis, lēgēs cīvītātum, virtūs frātrum, parte pōpūlī. 2. Altītūdo montium, altītūdīne flūmīnis, lūnae partem. 3. Hōmīnēs oppīdōrum, cīvītātis pācem, pēcūniā consūlis, hōmīnis frātre.

II. *Translate into Latin :*

1. By the river, to the virtue of the consul, for a part of the town. 2. Ye citizens of the state, to the laws of virtue, to the moon. 3. With the money of the citizens, to the men of the town, to a part of the people.

## THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

17. Nouns of the fourth declension end in ūs, generally masculine; and ū, neuter. They are thus declined :

Fructus, m., <i>fruit</i> .		Cornū, n., <i>a horn</i> .	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
NOM. fructus,	fructūs,	cornū,	cornūa,
GEN. fructūs,	fructūum,	cornūs,	cornūum,
DAT. fructūī,	fructībus,	cornū,	cornībus,
ACC. fructum,	fructūs,	cornū,	cornūa,
VOC. fructus,	fructūs,	cornū,	cornūa,
ABL. fructū.	fructībus.	cornū.	cornībus.

**Note.**—The stem ends in u, as fructu, cornū; the bases are fruct, corn.

For additional practice, decline the nouns in the following

## VOCABULARY.

cantus, ūs, m., a song.  
 fluctus, ūs, m., a wave.  
 gradus, ūs, m., a step.  
 exercitus, ūs, m., an army.  
 genu, ūs, n., a knee.  
 oratio, ōnis, f., speech, oration.  
 currus, ūs, m., a chariot.  
 versus, ūs, m., a verse.

avis, is, f., a bird.  
 honor, ōris, m., honor.  
 adventus, ūs, m., arrival.  
 nūmerus, ī, m., number.  
 terra, ae, f., earth, land.  
 impetus, ūs, m., an attack.  
 Vergilius, ī, m., Virgil.  
 pratum, ī, n., a meadow.

I. *Translate into English :*

1. Cantibus, cantibus avium, gradus, gradus honoris.  
 2. Fluctum maris, impetum exercitus, militis genua. 3.  
 Versibus Vergilii, praetorum numero. 4. Regi terrae,  
 consulis honore, orationum numero.

II. *Translate into Latin :*

1. By the waves, by the waves of the sea, to the chariot of the consul. 2. To the arrival of the army, the attack of the soldiers, by the speeches of the consul. 3. To the song of the bird, a land of meadows, by the number of honors.

III. *Dŏmus*, a house, f., is partly of the second and partly of the fourth declension.

Singular.	Plural.
NOM. <i>dŏmus</i> ,	<i>dŏmūs</i> ,
GEN. <i>dŏmūs</i> ( <i>dŏmī</i> ),	<i>dŏmūm</i> ( <i>dŏmōrum</i> ),
DAT. <i>dŏmūī</i> ( <i>dŏmō</i> ),	<i>dŏmībus</i> ,
ACC. <i>dŏmum</i> ,	<i>dŏmōs</i> ( <i>dŏmūs</i> ),
VOC. <i>dŏmus</i> ,	<i>dŏmūs</i> ,
ABL. <i>dŏmō</i> ( <i>dŏmū</i> ).	<i>dŏmībus</i> .

**Note.**—*Dŏmī* commonly means *at home*.

## THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

18. Nouns of the fifth declension end in *ēs*, feminine. They are thus declined :

<i>Diēs</i> , m. or f., a day.		<i>Rēs</i> , f., a thing.	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
NOM. <i>diēs</i> ,	<i>diēs</i> ,	<i>rēs</i> ,	<i>rēs</i> ,
GEN. <i>diēī</i> ,	<i>diērum</i> ,	<i>rēī</i> ,	<i>rērum</i> ,
DAT. <i>diēī</i> ,	<i>diēbus</i> ,	<i>rēī</i> ,	<i>rēbus</i> ,
ACC. <i>diem</i> ,	<i>diēs</i> ,	<i>rem</i> ,	<i>rēs</i> ,
VOC. <i>diēs</i> ,	<i>diēs</i> ,	<i>rēs</i> ,	<i>rēs</i> ,
ABL. <i>diē</i> .	<i>diēbus</i> .	<i>rē</i> .	<i>rēbus</i> .

**Note 1.**—*Diēs* and *rēs* are the only nouns of this declension which have all the cases of both numbers.

**Note 2.**—In this declension the stem and the base are the same, and both end in *e*, as *diē*, *re*.

Other words for practice may be selected from the following

## VOCABULARY.

*fīdēs, ōī, f.*, faith, fidelity.

*āciēs, ēī, f.*, battle-array.

*spēs, ōī, f.*, hope.

*fāciēs, ēī, f.*, face, appearance.

*spēcīēs, ēī, f.*, sight, appearance.

*vox, vōcis, f.*, the voice.

*ōculus, ī, m.*, the eye.

*nox, noctis, f.*, night.

*hostis, is, m. and f.*, an enemy.

*sālūs, ūtis, f.*, safety.

*vulnus, ōris, n.*, a wound.

*ēquītātus, ūs, m.*, cavalry.

*nauta, ae, m.*, a sailor.

*lībertās, ātis, f.*, liberty.

### I. *Translate into English :*

1. *Āmīcōrum, āmīcōrum fīdē, hostium, hostium āciēs.*
2. *Sālūtis, spem sālūtis, fāciēī, fāciem urbis.*
3. *Spēcīē, spēcīē lībertātis, vulnērībus mīlītum.*
4. *Nautārum, nautārum spēī, vōcēs, vōcēs hostium.*

### II. *Translate into Latin :*

1. Of the enemy, the hope of the enemy, by the voices, by the voices of the sailors.
2. To the cavalry, to the cavalry of the enemy, for safety, for the safety of the cavalry.
3. By the battle-array, by the battle-array of the enemy, to the voice, to the voice of a friend.
4. O hope of liberty, by the voice of the king, to the fidelity of friends, with the hope of safety.

**Question 1.**—Is the *e* in *lībertās* long or short? (See 7, 4.)

**2.**—Which syllable of *lībertās* has the accent? (See 8, 2.)

## COMPOUND NOUNS.

19. Compound nouns, like *jusjūrandum*, *an oath*; *respublica*, *a commonwealth*, are perhaps better written with the

parts separated (*jūs jūrandum, rēs publīca*); in either case each part is inflected according to the declension to which it belongs.

## ADJECTIVES.

20. Adjectives are declined like nouns of similar terminations.

### I. Adjectives of the first and second declension.

*Bōnus, good. Tēner, tender. Pīger, lazy.*

	Singular.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	<i>bōnus,</i>	<i>bōna,</i>	<i>bōnum,</i>
GEN.	<i>bōnī,</i>	<i>bōnae,</i>	<i>bōnī,</i>
DAT.	<i>bōnō,</i>	<i>bōnae,</i>	<i>bōnō,</i>
ACC.	<i>bōnum,</i>	<i>bōnam,</i>	<i>bōnum,</i>
VOC.	<i>bōne,</i>	<i>bōna,</i>	<i>bōnum,</i>
ABL.	<i>bōnō.</i>	<i>bōnā.</i>	<i>bōnō.</i>
	Plural.		
NOM.	<i>bōnī,</i>	<i>bōnae,</i>	<i>bōna,</i>
GEN.	<i>bōnōrum,</i>	<i>bōnārum,</i>	<i>bōnōrum,</i>
DAT.	<i>bōnīs,</i>	<i>bōnīs,</i>	<i>bōnīs,</i>
ACC.	<i>bōnōs,</i>	<i>bōnās,</i>	<i>bōna,</i>
VOC.	<i>bōnī,</i>	<i>bōnae,</i>	<i>bōna,</i>
ABL.	<i>bōnīs.</i>	<i>bōnīs.</i>	<i>bōnīs.</i>
	Singular.		
NOM.	<i>tēner,</i>	<i>tēnēra,</i>	<i>tēnērum,</i>
GEN.	<i>tēnērī,</i>	<i>tēnērae,</i>	<i>tēnērī,</i>
DAT.	<i>tēnērō,</i>	<i>tēnērae,</i>	<i>tēnērō,</i>
ACC.	<i>tēnērum,</i>	<i>tēnēram,</i>	<i>tēnērum,</i>
VOC.	<i>tēner,</i>	<i>tēnēra,</i>	<i>tēnērum,</i>
ABL.	<i>tēnērō.</i>	<i>tēnērā.</i>	<i>tēnērō.</i>



<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. tēnērī,		tēnērae,	tēnēra,
GEN. tēnērōrum,		tēnērārum,	tēnērōrum,
DAT. tēnērīs,		tēnērīs,	tēnērīs,
ACC. tēnērōs,		tēnērās,	tēnēra,
VOC. tēnērī,		tēnērae,	tēnēra,
ABL. tēnērīs.		tēnērīs.	tēnērīs.

<i>Singular.</i>		
NOM. pīger,	pīgra,	pīgrum,
GEN. pīgrī,	pīgrae,	pīgrī,
DAT. pīgrō,	pīgrae,	pīgrō,
ACC. pīgrum,	pīgram,	pīgrum,
VOC. pīger,	pīgra,	pīgrum,
ABL. pīgrō.	pīgrā.	pīgrō.

<i>Plural.</i>		
NOM. pīgrī,	pīgrae,	pīgra,
GEN. pīgrōrum,	pīgrārum,	pīgrōrum,
DAT. pīgrīs,	pīgrīs,	pīgrīs,
ACC. pīgrōs,	pīgrās,	pīgra,
VOC. pīgrī,	pīgrae,	pīgra,
ABL. pīgrīs.	pīgrīs.	pīgrīs.

**Question.**—Why is the *i* in *pīgra* common? (See 7, 5.)

## II. Adjectives of the third declension.

### 1. With three terminations.

#### *Acer, sharp.*

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. ācer,		ācris,	ācre,
GEN. ācris,		ācris,	ācris,
DAT. ācrī,		ācrī,	ācrī,
ACC. ācrem,		ācrem,	ācre,
VOC. ācer,		ācris,	ācre,
ABL. ācrī.		ācrī.	ācrī.

	Plural.	
NOM. <i>acrēs</i> ,	<i>acrēs</i> ,	<i>acrīa</i> ,
GEN. <i>acrium</i> ,	<i>acrium</i> ,	<i>acrium</i> ,
DAT. <i>acrībus</i> ,	<i>acrībus</i> ,	<i>acrībus</i> ,
ACC. <i>acrēs</i> ,	<i>acrēs</i> ,	<i>acrīa</i> ,
VOC. <i>acrēs</i> ,	<i>acrēs</i> ,	<i>acrīa</i> ,
ABL. <i>acrībus</i> .	<i>acrībus</i> .	<i>acrībus</i> .

## 2. With two terminations.

**Mītis**, *mild*.

Singular.		Plural.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. <i>mītis</i> ,	<i>mīte</i> ,	<i>mītēs</i> ,	<i>mītīa</i> ,
GEN. <i>mītis</i> ,	<i>mītis</i> ,	<i>mītium</i> ,	<i>mītium</i> ,
DAT. <i>mītī</i> ,	<i>mītī</i> ,	<i>mītībus</i> ,	<i>mītībus</i> ,
ACC. <i>mitem</i> ,	<i>mīte</i> ,	<i>mītēs</i> ,	<i>mītīa</i> ,
VOC. <i>mītis</i> ,	<i>mīte</i> ,	<i>mītēs</i> ,	<i>mītīa</i> ,
ABL. <i>mītī</i> .	<i>mītī</i> .	<i>mītībus</i> .	<i>mītībus</i> .

**Mītor**, *milder* (comparative degree).

Singular.		Plural.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. <i>mītor</i> ,	<i>mītius</i> ,	<i>mītīōrēs</i> ,	<i>mītīōra</i> ,
GEN. <i>mītīōris</i> ,	<i>mītīōris</i> ,	<i>mītīōrum</i> ,	<i>mītīōrum</i> ,
DAT. <i>mītīōrī</i> ,	<i>mītīōrī</i> ,	<i>mītīōrībus</i> ,	<i>mītīōrībus</i> ,
ACC. <i>mītīōrem</i> ,	<i>mītius</i> ,	<i>mītīōrēs</i> ,	<i>mītīōra</i> ,
VOC. <i>mītīōr</i> ,	<i>mītius</i> ,	<i>mītīōrēs</i> ,	<i>mītīōra</i> ,
ABL. <i>mītīōre</i> (-ī).	<i>mītīōre</i> (-ī).	<i>mītīōrībus</i> .	<i>mītīōrībus</i> .

**Note.**—All comparatives of adjectives are declined like *mītior*; except *plūs*, *more*, which is thus declined:

Singular.		Plural.
<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. <i>plūs</i> ,	<i>plūrēs</i> ,	<i>plūra</i> (-ia),
GEN. <i>plūris</i> ,	<i>plūrium</i> ,	<i>plūrium</i> ,
DAT. —,	<i>plūrībus</i> ,	<i>plūrībus</i> ,
ACC. <i>plūs</i> ,	<i>plūrēs</i> ,	<i>plūra</i> (-ia),
ABL. <i>plūre</i> .	<i>plūrībus</i> .	<i>plūrībus</i> .

**Complūrēs**, *several*, is declined like *plūrēs*.

## 3. With one termination.

**Fēlix, happy.**

Singular.		Plural.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. <i>fēlix</i> ,	<i>fēlix</i> ,	<i>fēlicēs</i> ,	<i>fēlicia</i> ,
GEN. <i>fēlicis</i> ,	<i>fēlicis</i> ,	<i>fēlicium</i> ,	<i>fēlicium</i> ,
DAT. <i>fēlicī</i> ,	<i>fēlicī</i> ,	<i>fēlicibus</i> ,	<i>fēlicibus</i> ,
ACC. <i>fēlicem</i> ,	<i>fēlix</i> ,	<i>fēlicēs</i> ,	<i>fēlicia</i> ,
VOC. <i>fēlix</i> ,	<i>fēlix</i> ,	<i>fēlicēs</i> ,	<i>fēlicia</i> ,
ABL. <i>fēlicī</i> (- <i>ě</i> ).	<i>fēlicī</i> (- <i>ě</i> ).	<i>fēlicibus</i> .	<i>fēlicibus</i> .

**Prūdēns, prudent.**

Singular.		Plural.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. <i>prūdēns</i> ,	<i>prūdēns</i> ,	<i>prūdētēs</i> ,	<i>prūdēntia</i> ,
GEN. <i>prūdētis</i> ,	<i>prūdētis</i> ,	<i>prūdētium</i> ,	<i>prūdētium</i> ,
DAT. <i>prūdētī</i> ,	<i>prūdētī</i> ,	<i>prūdētibus</i> ,	<i>prūdētibus</i> ,
ACC. <i>prūdētem</i> ,	<i>prūdēns</i> ,	<i>prūdētēs</i> ,	<i>prūdēntia</i> ,
VOC. <i>prūdēns</i> ,	<i>prūdēns</i> ,	<i>prūdētēs</i> ,	<i>prūdēntia</i> ,
ABL. <i>prūdētī</i> (- <i>ě</i> ).	<i>prūdētī</i> (- <i>ě</i> ).	<i>prūdētibus</i> .	<i>prūdētibus</i> .

**Āmans, loving.**

Singular.		Plural.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. <i>āmans</i> ,	<i>āmans</i> ,	<i>āmantēs</i> ,	<i>āmantia</i> ,
GEN. <i>āmantis</i> ,	<i>āmantis</i> ,	<i>āmantium</i> ,	<i>āmantium</i> ,
DAT. <i>āmantī</i> ,	<i>āmantī</i> ,	<i>āmantibus</i> ,	<i>āmantibus</i> ,
ACC. <i>āmantem</i> ,	<i>āmans</i> ,	<i>āmantēs</i> ,	<i>āmantia</i> ,
VOC. <i>āmans</i> ,	<i>āmans</i> ,	<i>āmantēs</i> ,	<i>āmantia</i> ,
ABL. <i>āmante</i> ( <i>ī</i> ).	<i>āmante</i> ( <i>ī</i> ).	<i>āmantibus</i> .	<i>āmantibus</i> .

**Vētus, old.**

Singular.		Plural.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. <i>vētus</i> ,	<i>vētus</i> ,	<i>vētērēs</i> ,	<i>vētēra</i> ,
GEN. <i>vētēris</i> ,	<i>vētēris</i> ,	<i>vētērum</i> ,	<i>vētērum</i> ,
DAT. <i>vētērī</i> ,	<i>vētērī</i> ,	<i>vētērībus</i> ,	<i>vētērībus</i> ,
ACC. <i>vētērem</i> ,	<i>vētus</i> ,	<i>vētērēs</i> ,	<i>vētēra</i> ,
VOC. <i>vētus</i> ,	<i>vētus</i> ,	<i>vētērēs</i> ,	<i>vētēra</i> ,
ABL. <i>vētēre</i> ( <i>ī</i> ).	<i>vētēre</i> ( <i>ī</i> ).	<i>vētērībus</i> .	<i>vētērībus</i> .

21. The following adjectives have the genitive in *ius* and the dative in *i*:

*ālius*, a, ud, *other, another.*

*nullus*, a, um, *no, no one.*

*sōlus*, a, um, *alone.*

*tōtus*, a, um, *the whole.*

*ullus*, a, um, *any.*

*ūnus*, a, um, *one.*

*alter*, *ēra*, *ērum*, *the other.*

*ūter*, *tra*, *trum*, *which of the two.*

*neuter*, *tra*, *trum*, *neither.*

#### Singular.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. <i>tōtus</i> ,	<i>tōta</i> ,	<i>tōtum</i> ,
GEN. <i>tōtius</i> ,	<i>tōtius</i> ,	<i>tōtius</i> ,
DAT. <i>tōtī</i> ,	<i>tōtī</i> ,	<i>tōtī</i> ,
ACC. <i>tōtum</i> ,	<i>tōtam</i> ,	<i>tōtum</i> ,
VOC. <i>tōte</i> ,	<i>tōta</i> ,	<i>tōtum</i> ,
ABL. <i>tōtō</i> .	<i>tōtā</i> .	<i>tōtō</i> .

The plural is regular, like that of *bōnus*.

Question.—Which syllable of *tōtius* has the accent? (See 8, 2.)

Note.—*Ālius* has *āliūd* in the Nom. and Acc. singular neuter.

Other words for practice are found in the following

### VOCABULARY.

*altus*, a, um, *high.*<sup>1</sup>

*magnus*, a, um, *great.*<sup>1</sup>

*parvus*, a, um, *small, little.*<sup>1</sup>

*mālus*, a, um, *bad.*<sup>1</sup>

*līber*, *ēra*, *ērum*, *free.*<sup>2</sup>

*pulcher*, *chra*, *chrom*, *beautiful.*<sup>3</sup>

*cēler*, *ēris*, *ēre*, *swift.*<sup>4</sup>

*injūria*, *ae*, *f.*, *injury.*

*fortis*, *e*, *brave, strong.*<sup>5</sup>

*tristis*, *e*, *sad.*<sup>5</sup>

*omnis*, *e*, *all, every.*<sup>5</sup>

*audax*, *ācis*, *bold, daring.*<sup>6</sup>

*rēcens*, *entis*, *recent, fresh.*<sup>6</sup>

*dīves*, *ītis*, *rich.*<sup>6</sup>

*ālācer*, *oris*, *ore*, *lively, eager.*<sup>4</sup>

*fīōs*, *fīōris*, *m.*, *a flower.*

22. An adjective must agree in **gender, number, and case** with the noun to which it belongs. Thus: *bōnus vir*, *a good man*; *omnium cīvītātum*, *of all the states*; *magna urbs*, *a great city*; *rēbus parvīs*, *to (or with) small things*.

1. *i. e.* declined like *bonus*. 2. Like *tener*. 3. Like *piger*. 4. Like *acer*. 5. Like *mitis*. 6. Like *felix*, etc.

I. *Translate into English :*

1. *Altus mons, altī montis, montium altōrum, altōs montēs, montibus altīs.* 2. *Vir magnus, magnō vīrō, magnōrum vīrōrum, magnōs vīrōs.* 3. *Audax nauta, nautae audācī, audācium nautārum.* 4. *Parvō mūrī, parvī mūrēs, hōmo dīves, dīvītis hōmīnis.* 5. *Līber pōpulus, cīvītātēs lībērae, ūnīus ōcūllī, causa nulla.* 6. *Impētū ālācrī, cēlērēs āvēs, mālō hōmīnī, tristium bellōrum.* 7. *Fortibus vīrīs, rēcentēs flōrēs, rēcentium injūriarum, tōtī insūlae.* 8. *Vētērēs vīrī, vētēris injūriae, prāta rēcentia, audācī linguā.*

II. *Translate into Latin :*

1. To high mountains, to great men, of a free people. 2. For bold men, to all men, of a good king. 3. By a little mouse, to a free state, of one master (*or* lord). 4. To one town, of another cause, recent injuries. 5. Of a bad man, to a sad war, of swift birds. 6. To bold sailors, of brave soldiers, a rich temple. 7. With fresh flowers, of fresh meadows, thou bold tongue. 8. Of a small town, of a great city, of a lively attack. 9. Old friends, of old friends, to old friends. 10. Of a sad night, to a bad king, of beautiful maidens.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

23. Adjectives are compared regularly by adding to the stem of the positive *-ior* for the comparative and *-issīmus* for the superlative, but vowel stems first drop their final vowel. Thus:

Pos.	Comp.	Sup.	
dūrus,	dūrior,	dūrissīmus,	<i>hard, harder, hardest.</i>
mītis,	mītiōr,	mītissīmus,	<i>mild, milder, mildest.</i>
fēlix,	fēliciōr,	fēlicissīmus,	<i>happy, happier, happiest.</i>

The comparative and superlative may also be formed by adding *-ior* and *-issīmus* to the base of the positive.

Compare *altus, fortis, tristis, audax, rēcens, āmans.*

1. Adjectives ending in *er* form the comparative regularly, but the superlative is formed by adding *-rĭmus* to the positive. Thus:

Pos.	Comp.	Sup.
<i>cēler, swift;</i>	<i>cēlērĭor,</i>	<i>cēlerrĭmus.</i>
<i>pulcher, beautiful;</i>	<i>pulchrĭor,</i>	<i>pulcherrĭmus.</i>

In like manner compare *lĭber, ācer*.

2. The following six adjectives, declined like *mĭtis*,

<i>facĭlis, easy;</i>	<i>simĭlis, like;</i>	<i>gracĭlis, slender;</i>
<i>difficĭlis, difficult;</i>	<i>dissimĭlis, unlike;</i>	<i>humĭlis, low—</i>

form the superlative by adding *-lĭmus* to the stem. Thus:

Pos., <i>facĭlis;</i>	Comp., <i>facĭlĭor;</i>	Sup., <i>facillĭmus.</i>
-----------------------	-------------------------	--------------------------

3. The following adjectives, in common use, are compared irregularly:

Pos.	Comp.	Sup.
<i>bōnus, good;</i>	<i>mēlĭor, better;</i>	<i>optĭmus, best.</i>
<i>mālus, bad;</i>	<i>pējor, worse;</i>	<i>pessĭmus, worst.</i>
<i>magnus, great;</i>	<i>mājor, greater;</i>	<i>maxĭmus, greatest.</i>
<i>parvus, small;</i>	<i>mīnor, less;</i>	<i>mīnimus, least.</i>
<i>multus, much;</i>	<i>plūs (neut.), more;</i>	<i>plūrĭmus, most.</i>
<i>dīves, } rich;</i>	<i>dīvītĭor, } richer;</i>	<i>dīvītissĭmus, } richest.</i>
<i>dīs, }</i>	<i>dītĭor, }</i>	<i>dītissĭmus, }</i>

Note.—Comparatives are declined like *mītĭor*, and superlatives like *bōnus*.

## COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

24. Adverbs often follow closely the comparison of the adjectives from which they are derived. Thus:

Adj.	Adv.	Comp.	Sup.
<i>dūrus,</i>	<i>dūrē, hardly;</i>	<i>dūrius,</i>	<i>dūrissĭmē.</i>
<i>mĭtis,</i>	<i>mīte, mildly;</i>	<i>mītius,</i>	<i>mītissĭmē.</i>
<i>fēlix,</i>	<i>fēlicĭter, happily;</i>	<i>fēlicĭus,</i>	<i>fēlicĭssĭmē.</i>

From this it will be noticed that the comparative of the adverb is the same as the neuter comparative of the adjective; and the superlative of the adverb is the superlative of the adjective with the ending *-us* changed to *ē*.

## VOCABULARY.

vōluptās, ātis, *f.*, pleasure.vīta, ae, *f.*, life.sōnītus, ūs, *m.*, a sound.ventus, ī, *m.*, the wind.sīdus, ōris, *n.*, a constellation.exsīlium, ī, *n.*, exile.īter, ītīnēris, *n.*, a journey.ēpistōla, ae, *f.*, a letter.I. *Translate into English:*

1. Altior mons, altiōrum montium, altissīmīs montibus.
2. Prāta tēnerrīma, ālacriōris vōluptātis, mīlītēs fortiōrēs.
3. Fortissīmōrum mīlītum, vītam fēliciōrem, mītius exsīlium.
4. Lēge mītissīmā, pulcherrīma urbs, libēriōris aquae.
5. Ācrior sōnītus, noctem tristissīmam, hōmīnum prūdentiōrum.
6. Ēpistōla rēcēntior, mājōre nūmērō, īter fācīlius, fācillīmā viā.
7. Cēlerrīmōrum ventōrum, hōmīnis audācissīmī, mīnōra sīdēra.

II. *Translate into Latin:*

1. Higher mountains, of the highest mountains, with higher mountains.
2. To the most tender meadows, with a more lively pleasure, of braver soldiers.
3. To the bravest soldier, of the happiest life, with a milder exile.
4. The most recent letters, with the greatest number, by the easiest ways.
5. Of milder laws, of a more beautiful city, by an easier journey.
6. Of a sharper sound, a sadder night, to the most prudent men.
7. By a swifter wind, of bolder men, of the smallest star.

## NUMERALS.

25. Numeral adjectives are of three kinds:

1. Cardinal numbers; as, ūnus, *one*; quinque, *five*.
2. Ordinal numbers; as, prīmus, *first*; quintus, *fifth*.
3. Distributive numbers; as, quīnī, *five apiece, by fives, five at a time*.

## Cardinals.

1. ūnus, a, um, *one*.
2. duo, ae, o, *two*.
3. trēs, tria, *three*.
4. quattuor, *four*.
5. quinque, etc.
6. sex,
7. septem,
8. octo, •
9. nōvem,
10. dēcem,
11. undēcim,
12. duōdēcim,
13. trēdēcim,
14. quattuordēcim,
15. quindēcim,
16. sēdēcim *or* sexdēcim,
17. septemdēcim,
18. duōdēvīgintī,
19. undēvīgintī,
20. vīgintī,
21. vīgintī ūnus *or*  
ūnus et vīgintī,
22. vīgintī duo *or*  
duo et vīgintī,
30. trīgintā,
40. quadrāgintā,
50. quinquāgintā,
60. sexāgintā,
70. septuāgintā,
80. octōgintā,
90. nōnāgintā,
100. centum,
101. centum et ūnus *or*  
centum ūnus,

## Ordinals.

- prīmus, a, um, *first*.  
 sēcundus, a, um, *second*.  
 tertius, a, um, *third*.  
 quartus, a, um, *fourth*.  
 quintus, a, um, etc.  
 sextus,  
 septīmus,  
 octāvus,  
 nōnus,  
 dēcīmus,  
 undēcīmus,  
 duōdēcīmus,  
 tertius dēcīmus,  
 quartus dēcīmus,  
 quintus dēcīmus,  
 sextus dēcīmus,  
 septīmus dēcīmus,  
 duōdēvīcēsīmus,  
 undēvīcēsīmus,  
 vīcēsīmus,  
 ūnus et vīcēsīmus *or*  
 vīcēsīmus prīmus,  
 alter et vīcēsīmus *or*  
 vīcēsīmus sēcundus,  
 trīcēsīmus,  
 quadrāgēsīmus,  
 quinquāgēsīmus,  
 sexāgēsīmus,  
 septuāgēsīmus,  
 octōgēsīmus,  
 nōnāgēsīmus,  
 centēsīmus,  
 centēsīmus prīmus,



Cardinals.	Ordinals.
200. dūcentī, ae, a,	dūcentēsīmus,
300. trēcentī, ae, a,	trēcentēsīmus,
400. quadringentī, ae, a,	quadringentēsīmus,
500. quingentī, ae, a,	quingentēsīmus,
600. sexcentī, ae, a,	sexcentēsīmus,
700. septingentī, ae, a,	septingentēsīmus,
800. octingentī, ae, a,	octingentēsīmus,
900. nōngentī, ae, a,	nōngentēsīmus,
1000. mille,	millēsīmus,
2000. duo mīlia (millia),	bis millēsīmus,
10000. dēcem mīlia,	dēciēs millēsīmus,
100000. centum mīlia.	centiēs millēsīmus.
Distributives.	Numeral Adverbs.
1. singŭlī, ae, a, <i>one apiece, etc.</i>	sēmēl, <i>once.</i>
2. bīnī, ae, a, <i>two each, etc.</i>	bis, <i>twice.</i>
3. ternī or trīnī, <i>by threes, etc.</i>	ter, <i>three times.</i>
4. quāternī, <i>four at a time, etc.</i>	quāter, <i>four times.</i>
5. quīnī,	quinqūiēs,
6. sēnī,	sexiēs,
7. septēnī,	septiēs,
8. octōnī,	octiēs,
9. nōvēnī,	nōviēs,
10. dēnī,	dēciēs,
11. undēnī,	undēciēs,
12. duōdēnī,	duōdēciēs,
13. ternī dēnī,	terdēciēs,
14. quāternī dēnī,	quāterdēciēs,
15. quīnī dēnī,	quindēciēs,
16. sēnī dēnī,	sēdēciēs,
17. septēnī dēnī,	septiesdēciēs,
18. duōdēvīcēnī,	duōdēvīciēs,
19. undēvīcēnī,	undēvīciēs,

## Distributives.

20. vīcēnī,  
 21. vīcēnī singŭlī,  
 30. trīcēnī,  
 40. quadrāgēnī,  
 50. quinquāgēnī,  
 60. sexāgēnī,  
 70. septuāgēnī,  
 80. octōgēnī,  
 90. nōnāgēnī,  
 100. centēnī.

## Numeral Adverbs.

- vīciēs,  
 sēmel et vīciēs,  
 trīciēs,  
 quadrāgiēs,  
 quinquāgiēs,  
 sexāgiēs,  
 septuāgiēs,  
 octōgiēs,  
 nōnāgiēs,  
 centiēs.

26. The ordinals are declined like *bōnus*; the distributives, like the plural of *bōnus*. *Unus*, *duo*, and *trēs* are thus declined :

	Singular.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	ūnus,	ūna,	ūnum,
GEN.	ūnŭs,	ūnŭs,	ūnŭs,
DAT.	ūnī,	ūnī,	ūnī,
ACC.	ūnum,	ūnam,	ūnum,
VOC.	ūne,	ūna,	ūnum,
ABL.	ūnō.	ūnā.	ūnō.
	Plural.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	ūnī,	ūnae,	ūna,
GEN.	ūnōrum,	ūnārum,	ūnōrum,
DAT.	ūnīs,	ūnīs,	ūnīs,
ACC.	ūnōs,	ūnās,	ūna,
VOC.	—	—	—
ABL.	ūnīs.	ūnīs.	ūnīs.

Note.—Genitives in *-ius*, with the *i* common, have the accent on the *i*.

Plural.				
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. duo,	duae,	duo,	trēs,	tria,
GEN. duōrum,	duārum,	duōrum,	trium,	trium,
DAT. duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus,	tribus,	tribus,
ACC. duōs or duo,	duās,	duo,	trēs,	tria,
ABL. duōbus.	duābus.	duōbus.	tribus.	tribus.

## PRONOUNS.

27. 1. The personal pronouns are thus declined :

Singular.	Plural.
NOM. <i>ěgo, I,</i>	<i>nōs, we,</i>
GEN. <i>měi, of me,</i>	<i>nostrum or nostrī, of us,</i>
DAT. <i>mĭhĭ, to or for me,</i>	<i>nōbĭs, to or for us,</i>
ACC. <i>mē, me,</i>	<i>nōs, us,</i>
ABL. <i>mē, with, from, by, or</i> <i>in me.</i>	<i>nōbĭs, with, from, by, or in</i> <i>us.</i>
NOM. <i>tū, thou,</i>	<i>vōs, ye or you,</i>
GEN. <i>tuī, of thee,</i>	<i>vestrum or vestrī, of you,</i>
DAT. <i>tĭbĭ, to or for thee,</i>	<i>vōbĭs, to or for you,</i>
ACC. <i>tē, thee,</i>	<i>vōs, you,</i>
VOC. <i>tū, O thou,</i>	<i>vōs, O ye or you,</i>
ABL. <i>tē, with, from, by, or</i> <i>in thee.</i>	<i>vōbĭs, with, from, by, or in</i> <i>you.</i>

The reflexive personal pronoun is thus declined :

Singular and Plural.

GEN. <i>suī, of himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>
DAT. <i>sĭbĭ, to or for himself, etc.</i>
ACC. <i>sē or sēsē, himself, etc.</i>
ABL. <i>sē or sēsē, with, from, by, or in himself, etc.</i>

## 2. The possessive pronouns,

<i>meus,</i>	<i>mea,</i>	<i>meum,</i>	<i>my, mine, my own;</i>
<i>tuus,</i>	<i>tua,</i>	<i>tuum,</i>	<i>thy, thine, thy own;</i>
<i>suus,</i>	<i>sua,</i>	<i>suum,</i>	<i>his, her, its, their, his own, etc.,</i>

are declined like *bōnus*, but *meus* has *mī* in the vocative singular masculine.

<i>noster,</i>	<i>nostra,</i>	<i>nostrum,</i>	<i>our, our own, and</i>
<i>vester,</i>	<i>vestra,</i>	<i>vestrum,</i>	<i>your, your own,</i>

are declined like *pīger*.

## 3. The demonstrative pronouns are thus declined:

*Is, this, that; or, he, she, it.*

## Singular.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. <i>is,</i>	<i>ea,</i>	<i>id,</i>
GEN. <i>ējus,</i>	<i>ējus,</i>	<i>ējus,</i>
DAT. <i>eī,</i>	<i>eī,</i>	<i>eī,</i>
ACC. <i>eum,</i>	<i>eam,</i>	<i>id,</i>
ABL. <i>eō.</i>	<i>eā.</i>	<i>eō.</i>

## Plural.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. <i>eī or iī,</i>	<i>eae,</i>	<i>ea,</i>
GEN. <i>eōrum,</i>	<i>eārum,</i>	<i>eōrum,</i>
DAT. <i>eīs or iīs,</i>	<i>eīs or iīs,</i>	<i>eīs or iīs,</i>
ACC. <i>eōs,</i>	<i>eās,</i>	<i>ea,</i>
ABL. <i>eīs or iīs.</i>	<i>eīs or iīs.</i>	<i>eīs or iīs.</i>

*Hic, this (near me); or, he, she, it.*

## Singular.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. <i>hic,</i>	<i>haec,</i>	<i>hōc,</i>
GEN. <i>hūjus,</i>	<i>hūjus,</i>	<i>hūjus,</i>
DAT. <i>huīc,</i>	<i>huīc,</i>	<i>huīc,</i>
ACC. <i>hunc,</i>	<i>hanc,</i>	<i>hōc,</i>
ABL. <i>hōc.</i>	<i>hāc.</i>	<i>hōc.</i>

	Plural.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	<i>hī,</i>	<i>hae,</i>	<i>haec,</i>
GEN.	<i>hōrum,</i>	<i>hārum,</i>	<i>hōrum,</i>
DAT.	<i>hīs,</i>	<i>hīs,</i>	<i>hīs,</i>
ACC.	<i>hōs,</i>	<i>hās,</i>	<i>haec,</i>
ABL.	<i>hīs.</i>	<i>hīs.</i>	<i>hīs.</i>

*Iste, that, that of yours ; or, he, she, it.*

## Singular.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	<i>iste,</i>	<i>ista,</i>	<i>istud,</i>
GEN.	<i>istīus,</i>	<i>istīus,</i>	<i>istīus,</i>
DAT.	<i>istī,</i>	<i>istī,</i>	<i>istī,</i>
ACC.	<i>istum,</i>	<i>istam,</i>	<i>istud,</i>
ABL.	<i>istō.</i>	<i>istā.</i>	<i>istō.</i>

## Plural.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	<i>istī,</i>	<i>istae,</i>	<i>ista,</i>
GEN.	<i>istōrum,</i>	<i>istārum,</i>	<i>istōrum,</i>
DAT.	<i>istīs,</i>	<i>istīs,</i>	<i>istīs,</i>
ACC.	<i>istōs,</i>	<i>istās,</i>	<i>ista,</i>
ABL.	<i>istīs.</i>	<i>istīs.</i>	<i>istīs.</i>

*Ille, that (yonder) ; or, he, she, it.*

## Singular.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	<i>ille,</i>	<i>illa,</i>	<i>illud,</i>
GEN.	<i>illīus,</i>	<i>illīus,</i>	<i>illīus,</i>
DAT.	<i>illī,</i>	<i>illī,</i>	<i>illī,</i>
ACC.	<i>illum,</i>	<i>illam,</i>	<i>illud,</i>
ABL.	<i>illō.</i>	<i>illā.</i>	<i>illō.</i>

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Plural.</i> <i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. illī,	illae,	illa,
GEN. illōrum,	illārum,	illōrum,
DAT. illīs,	illīs,	illīs,
ACC. illōs,	illās,	illa,
ABL. illīs.	illīs.	illīs.

**Idem, the same.**

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Singular.</i> <i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. Idem,	eādem,	Idem,
GEN. ējusdem,	ējusdem,	ējusdem,
DAT. eīdem,	eīdem,	eīdem,
ACC. eundem,	eandem,	Idem,
ABL. eōdem.	eādem.	eōdem.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Plural.</i> <i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. iidem or eīdem,	eaedem,	eādem,
GEN. eōrundem,	eārundem,	eōrundem,
DAT. eisdem or iisdem,	eisdem or iisdem,	eisdem or iisdem,
ACC. eosdem,	easdem,	eādem,
ABL. eisdem or iisdem.	eisdem or iisdem.	eisdem or iisdem.

4. The intensive personal pronoun is *ipse, self*; as, *ēgo ipse, I myself*; *vōs ipsi, you yourselves*; *hōmo ipse, the man himself*.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Singular.</i> <i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. ipse,	ipsa,	ipsum,
GEN. ipsīus,	ipsīus,	ipsīus,
DAT. ipsī,	ipsī,	ipsī,
ACC. ipsum,	ipsam,	ipsum,
Voc. ipse,	ipsa,	ipsum,
ABL. ipsō.	ipsā.	ipsō.

	Plural.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	ipsī,	ipsae,	ipsa,
GEN.	ipsōrum,	ipsārum,	ipsōrum,
DAT.	ipsis,	ipsis,	ipsis,
ACC.	ipsos,	ipsas,	ipsa,
VOC.	ipsī,	ipsae,	ipsa,
ABL.	ipsis.	ipsis.	ipsis.

5. The relative pronoun *quī*, *who*, *which*, is thus declined:

	Singular.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	quī,	quae,	quod,
GEN.	cūjus,	cūjus,	cūjus,
DAT.	cui,	cui,	cui,
ACC.	quem,	quam,	quod,
ABL.	quō.	quā.	quō.

	Plural.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	quī,	quae,	quae,
GEN.	quōrum,	quārum,	quōrum,
DAT.	quībus,	quībus,	quībus,
ACC.	quōs,	quās,	quae,
ABL.	quībus.	quībus.	quībus.

6. The interrogative pronoun *quis*, *who* ? *which* ? *what* ?

	Singular.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	quis,	quae,	quid,
GEN.	cūjus,	cūjus,	cūjus,
DAT.	cui,	cui,	cui,
ACC.	quem,	quam,	quid,
ABL.	quō.	quā.	quō.

	Plural.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	quī,	quae,	quae,
GEN.	quōrum,	quārum,	quōrum,
DAT.	quībus,	quībus,	quībus,
ACC.	quōs,	quās,	quae,
ABL.	quībus.	quībus.	quībus.

7. The interrogative adjective pronoun *quī*, *what? which?* is declined like the relative *quī*.

8. The indefinite pronoun *quis*, *any one, some one*, is declined like the interrogative *quis*, but in the neuter plural it has *qua* as well as *quae*.

9. The indefinite adjective pronoun *quī*, *any, some*, is declined like the relative *quī*, but it has *qua* as well as *quae* in both numbers.

10. The indefinite pronoun *āliquis*, *some one, something*.

	Singular.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	āliquis,	āliqua,	āliquid,
GEN.	ālicūjus,	ālicūjus,	ālicūjus,
DAT.	ālicuī,	ālicuī,	ālicuī,
ACC.	āliquem,	āliquam,	āliquid,
ABL.	āliquō.	āliquā.	āliquō.

	Plural.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	āliquī,	āliquae,	āliqua,
GEN.	āliquōrum,	āliquārum,	āliquōrum,
DAT.	āliquībus,	āliquībus,	āliquībus,
ACC.	āliquōs,	āliquās,	āliqua,
ABL.	āliquībus.	āliquībus.	āliquībus.

11. Other compounds of *quī* and *quis* are declined like them, but they have *quid* when used as substantives, and



*quod* when used as adjectives. Thus: *quīdam*, a certain one, some:

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. <i>quīdam</i> ,	<i>quaedam</i> ,	<i>quiddam</i> ( <i>subst.</i> ), <i>quoddam</i> ( <i>adj.</i> ).
GEN. <i>cūjusdam</i> ,	<i>cūjusdam</i> ,	<i>cūjusdam</i> .
DAT. <i>cuīdam</i> ,	<i>cuīdam</i> ,	<i>cuīdam</i> , etc.

I. *Translate into English:*

1. Ūnum oppīdum, duōrum rēgum, trībus insūlis, sex nautae. 2. Quintā parte, octāvō librō, vicēsīmum versum, centēsīmī annī. 3. Mīhi, vōbīs, sē, sēsē, sībi, nōbīs, tē, suī, mē, vōs, nōs. 4. Frāter meus, frātris mei, cīvītātis nostrae, pātrī suō. 5. Tuus āvus, ōcūlōrum tuōrum, jūdīcī nostrō, impētū vestrō. 6. Mīlītēs nostrōs, vōce tuā, dōmūs nostrae, sālūtī vestrae. 7. Eam urbem, ējus āgrī, eōrum āgrōrum, eae terrae. 8. Istud prātum, istōrum versuum, ēpistōlā istā, istō vulnēre. 9. Haec silva, hārum cīvītātum, huīc vōcī, hāc viā. 10. Eōdem annō, eadem puellae, ējusdem aetātis, eārundem cīvītātum. 11. Quae urbs? Quod templum? Cūjus montis? Quōrum hōmīnum? Quaedam virgo. 12. Illā lēge, illīus nōmīnis, illōrum annōrum, flūmīnībus illīs.

II. *Translate into Latin* (remembering that you make the possessive emphatic by placing it **before** its noun):

1. Three towns, to two kings, of three islands, ten sailors. 2. With the tenth part, in the third book, of the thirtieth verse, to the fortieth year. 3. Of me, to thee, to himself, of us, to you. 4. My father, to my brother, to your state, to their fathers. 5. Of thy grandfather, to your eyes, of our judge, of our attack. 6. To our soldiers, by our voice, of thy house, by our safety. 7. This city, of these lands, to those fields, to this city. 8. That voice (of yours), by that speech (of yours), of these forests, to those mountains. 9. Of the same temple, by the same law, of the same men.

10. To what city? of what temple? what wars? of a certain maiden.

## VERBS.

28. The Latin verb has four moods: the **indicative**, the **subjunctive**, the **imperative**, and the **infinitive**.

1. The indicative, imperative, and infinitive have, in general, the same uses as the English moods of the same name. The use of the subjunctive is best learned in connection with the syntax of the verb.

2. There are six tenses: the **present**, **imperfect**, and **future** denoting **incomplete** action, and the **perfect**, **pluperfect**, and **future perfect** denoting **completed** action.

3. The present, future, pluperfect, and future perfect have, in general, the same uses as the English tenses of the same name.

4. The **imperfect** tense denotes an action as *going on* at some past time, *i. e.*, *continued*, *customary*, or *repeated* action, as *scribēbam*, *I was writing*, *I used to write*, *I wrote*.

5. The **perfect** tense has two uses:

I. One in which it corresponds to the English perfect with **have**, as *scripsī*, *I have written*. It is then called the **perfect definite**.

II. Another, in which it corresponds to the English past tense, as *scripsī*, *I wrote*. It is then called the **historical perfect**.

6. The present, future, perfect definite, and future perfect are called **primary tenses**; the imperfect, historical perfect, and pluperfect are called **secondary tenses**.

7. The **principal parts** of a verb are the present indicative, the present infinitive, the perfect indicative, and the supine. They are called principal parts because all the other parts of the verb are formed from them.

8. The **gerund** is a verbal noun of the second declension.

The **supines** have the form of the accusative and the ablative of a noun of the fourth declension.

9. The endings of a Latin verb indicate its voice, mood, tense, number, and person. The personal pronoun, therefore, as **subject** or **nominative**, is generally not expressed, unless it is emphatic or contrasted; as, *scrībimus, we write*; but *nōs, nōs consūlēs, dēsūmus, WE, we consuls, are wanting*.

29. The irregular verb **sum, I am**, is thus conjugated:

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
<i>sum, I am</i> ;	<i>esse, to be</i> ;	<i>fuī, I have been, I was</i> ;	—.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>sum, I am.</i>	<i>sūmus, we are.</i>
<i>es, thou art (you are).</i>	<i>estis, you are.</i>
<i>est, he (she, it) is.</i>	<i>sunt, they are.</i>

##### IMPERFECT.

<i>eram, I was.</i>	<i>erāmus, we were.</i>
<i>erās, thou wast (you were).</i>	<i>erātis, you were.</i>
<i>erat, he (she, it) was.</i>	<i>erant, they were.</i>

##### FUTURE.

<i>ero, I shall be.</i>	<i>erīmus, we shall be.</i>
<i>eris, thou wilt be.</i>	<i>erītis, you will be.</i>
<i>erit, he will be.</i>	<i>erunt, they will be.</i>

##### PERFECT.

<i>fuī, I have been, I was.</i>	<i>fuīmus, we have been.</i>
<i>fuistī, thou hast been, etc.</i>	<i>fuistis, you have been.</i>
<i>fuit, he has been.</i>	<i>fuērunt or fuēre, they have been.</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

## Singular.

fuēram, *I had been.*fuērās, *thou hadst been.*fuērat, *he had been.*

## Plural.

fuērāmus, *we had been.*fuērātis, *you had been.*fuērant, *they had been.*

## FUTURE PERFECT.

fuēro, *I shall have been.*fuēris, *thou wilt have been.*fuērit, *he will have been.*fuērīmus, *we shall have been.*fuērītis, *you will have been.*fuērint, *they will have been.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

sim, *I may be.*sīs, *thou mayst be.*sit, *he may be.*sīmus, *we may be.*sītis, *you may be.*sint, *they may be.*IMPERFECT.—*I might, should, or would be.*essem, *I should be.*essēs, *thou wouldst be.*esset, *he would be.*essēmus, *we should be.*essētis, *you would be.*essent, *they would be.*

## PERFECT.

fuērīm, *I may have been.*fuēris, *thou mayst have been.*fuērit, *he may have been.*fuērīmus, *we may have been.*fuērītis, *you may have been.*fuērint, *they may have been.*PLUPERFECT.—*I might, should, or would have been.*fuissem, *I should have been.*fuissēs, *thou wouldst, etc.*fuisset, *he would have been.*fuissēmus, *we should, etc.*fuissētis, *you would, etc.*fuissent, *they would, etc.*

## IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

PRES. es, *be thou.*este, *be ye.*FUT. esto, *thou shalt be, be thou.*estōte, *ye shall be, be ye.*esto, *he shall be, let him be.*sunto, *they shall be, let them be.*

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. esse, *to be.*PERF. fuisse, *to have been.*FUT. fūtūrus esse, *to be about to be.*

## FUTURE PARTICIPLE.

fūtūrus, a, um, *about to be.*

**Note.**—Instead of the regular forms of the imperfect subjunctive and future infinitive of *sum*, the following are frequently used :

## IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

fōrem = essem,

——,

fōrēs = essēs,

——,

fōret = esset.

fōrent = essent.

## PRESENT INFINITIVE.

fōre = fūtūrus esse.

I. *Translate into English :*

1. Fuëro, ērāmus, ēro, fuërim, sītis. 2. Sunto, est, fuērās, esset, fuisse. 3. Este, fūtūrus esse, sunt, fuissētis, fuērunt. 4. Sint, ērīmus, estōte, fuit, fuērīmus. 5. Fu-  
 ērint, fuērant, fuistī, ērātis, sūmus. 6. Estis, fuērat, fuistis, fuissēmus, ērant. 7. Fuērātis, sīmus, fuī, es, ēram. 8. Fuīmus, fuēre, ērītis, fuēram, essēs. 9. Fu-  
 issem, sīs, ēris, essētis, fuērāmus. 10. Sim, essem, fuissēs, ērunt, fuērīmus. 11. Fōret, fōrem, fōre, fōrēs, fōrent.

II. *Translate into Latin :*

1. We have been, we are, they were, thou wilt be, they had been. 2. Be thou, to be, we might have been, I had been. 3. We might be, they will be, you will be, I have been, he was. 4. He has been, he may have been, he will have been, we had been, he might be. 5. I shall be, he was, we shall be, I might be, they may be. 6. You have been, you had been, you will have been, I shall have been, he had been. 7. Be ye, let them be, let him be, we shall have been, thou hast been. 8. They might be, you may have been, he might have been, they have been, you were.

## Sum with Subject and Predicate.

## VOCABULARY.

altus, a, um, high, deep.  
 ūtilis, e, useful.  
 pēricŭlum, ī, n., danger.  
 Germānus, ī, m., a German.  
 Caesar, āris, m., Caesar.

Cicero, ōnis, m., Cicero.  
 per, prep. with Acc., through.  
 impērator, ōris, m., a commander.  
 in, prep. with Abl., in, on; with  
 Acc., into.

*Note.*—The word *there*, when a mere expletive (as in *there is*, *there are*, *there was*, etc.), has no corresponding word in Latin; hence it frequently happens that *est* = *there is*, *erat* = *there was*, *sunt* = *there are*, etc.

I. *Translate into English :*

1. Est leo in silvā. 2. Flūmen altum erat. 3. Hī montēs sunt altī. 4. Lēgēs ūtīlēs fuērunt. 5. Cicero consul fuērat. 6. Amīcī sūmus. 7. Quis fuērat rex Germānōrum? 8. Caesar erat impērator. 9. Est alta nix in montibus. 10. Nulla via est per silvās. 11. Fuissent fortēs milītēs. 12. Magna sunt pēricŭla bellī. 13. Fuimus in illā urbe. 14. Mūrēs parva ānimālia sunt.

II. *Translate into Latin :*

1. The king is rich. 2. The night has been sad. 3.

Horses are useful. 4. The snow was deep. 5. The consul has been prudent. 6. The rivers were deep. 7. Great was the name of Cicero. 8. Those soldiers had been brave. 9. These laws will be useful. 10. Who has been in\* the garden? 11. There was a road through the forest. 12. They will be in\* that city.

**Question.**—Which syllable of *fuŕimus* has the accent? (See 8, 2.)

## CONJUGATIONS.

**30.** There are four conjugations, distinguished by the vowel before *-re* in the present infinitive active. This vowel in the **first** conjugation is *a* long, as *amāre* ;  
 in the **second** conjugation is *e* long, as *monēre* ;  
 in the **third** conjugation is *e* short, as *regere* ;  
 in the **fourth** conjugation is *i* long, as *audire*.

## THE STEM IN VERBS.

1. The stem of a verb is shown in the active voice of the imperative mood ; as, *ama*. But in the third conjugation *-ŕ* must be rejected ; as, *reg*.

## 31. THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

### ACTIVE VOICE.

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
<i>āmō,</i>	<i>āmāre,</i>	<i>āmāvī,</i>	<i>āmātum.</i>

\* Use *in*. Prepositions are necessary in expressions denoting place or situation (except names of towns).

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.—*I love, do love, am loving.*

Singular.

āmo, *I love.*āmās, *thou lovest.*āmat, *he loves.*

Plural.

āmāmus, *we love.*āmātis, *you love.*āmant, *they love.*IMPERFECT.—*I loved, was loving, did love.*āmābam, *I was loving.*āmābās, *thou wast loving.*āmābat, *he was loving.*āmābāmus, *we were loving.*āmābātis, *you were loving.*āmābant, *they were loving.*

FUTURE.

āmābo, *I shall love.*āmābis, *thou wilt love.*āmābit, *he will love.*āmābīmus, *we shall love.*āmābītis, *you will love.*āmābunt, *they will love.*PERFECT.—*I have loved or I loved.*āmāvī, *I have loved.*āmāvistī, *thou hast loved.*āmāvit, *he has loved.*āmāvīmus, *we have loved.*āmāvistis, *you have loved.*āmāvērunt, or } *they have*  
āmāvēre, } *loved.*

PLUPERFECT.

āmāvēram, *I had loved.*āmāvērās, *thou hadst loved.*āmāvērat, *he had loved.*āmāvērāmus, *we had loved.*āmāvērātis, *you had loved.*āmāvērant, *they had loved.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

āmāvēro, *I shall have loved.*āmāvēris, *thou wilt, etc.*āmāvērit, *he will have loved.*āmāvērīmus, *we shall, etc.*āmāvērītis, *you will, etc.*āmāvērint, *they will, etc.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

āmēm, *I may love.*āmēs, *thou mayst love.*āmet, *he may love.*āmēmus, *we may love.*āmētis, *you may love.*āment, *they may love.*



IMPERFECT.—*I might, should, or would love.*

## Singular.

āmārem, *I might love.*āmārēs, *thou mightst love.*āmāret, *he might love.*

## Plural.

āmārēmus, *we might love.*āmārētis, *you might love.*āmārent, *they might love.*

## PERFECT.

āmāvērīm, *I may have loved.*āmāvērīs, *thou mayst, etc.*āmāvērīt, *he may have loved.*āmāvērīmus, *we may, etc.*āmāvērītis, *you may, etc.*āmāvērīnt, *they may, etc.*PLUPERFECT.—*I might, should, or would have loved.*āmāvīssēm, *I might, etc.*āmāvīssēs, *thou mightst, etc.*āmāvīssēt, *he might, etc.*āmāvīssēmūs, *we might, etc.*āmāvīssētis, *you might, etc.*āmāvīssēt, *they might, etc.*

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. āmā, *love thou.*FUT. āmāto, *thou shalt love*  
*or love thou.*āmāto, *he shall love or*  
*let him love.*āmāte, *love ye.*āmātōte, *you shall love or*  
*love ye.*āmanto, *they shall love or*  
*let them love.*

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. āmāre, *to love.*PERF. āmāvīsse, *to have loved.*FUT. āmātūrus esse, *to be*  
*about to love.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. āmans, *loving.*FUT. āmātūrus, *a, um, about*  
*to love.*

## GERUND.

GEN. āmandī, *of loving.*DAT. āmandō, *for loving.*ACC. āmandum, *loving.*ABL. āmandō, *by loving.*

## SUPINE.

ACC. āmātum, *to love.*ABL. āmātū, *to love or to be*  
*loved.*

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.  
āmor,

Pres. Inf.  
āmārī,

Perf. Ind.  
āmātus sum.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.

Plural.

āmor, *I am loved.*

āmāmur, *we are loved.*

āmāris or -re, *thou art loved.*

āmāminī, *you are loved.*

āmātur, *he is loved.*

āmāntur, *they are loved.*

## IMPERFECT.

āmābar, *I was loved.*

āmābāmur, *we were loved.*

āmābāris or -re, *thou wast, etc.*

āmābāminī, *you were loved.*

āmābātur, *he was loved.*

āmābantur, *they were loved.*

## FUTURE.

āmābor, *I shall be loved.*

āmābīmur, *we shall be loved.*

āmābēris or -re, *thou wilt, etc.*

āmābīminī, *you will, etc.*

āmābītur, *he will be loved.*

āmābuntur, *they will, etc.*

PERFECT.—*I have been loved, I was loved.*

āmātus sum, *I have, etc.*

āmātī sūmus, *we have, etc.*

āmātus es, *thou hast, etc.*

āmātī estis, *you have, etc.*

āmātus est, *he has, etc.*

āmātī sunt, *they have, etc.*

PLUPERFECT.—*I had been loved.*

āmātus ēram, *I had, etc.*

āmātī ēramus, *we had, etc.*

āmātus ērās, *thou hadst, etc.*

āmātī ērātis, *you had, etc.*

āmātus ērat, *he had, etc.*

āmātī ērant, *they had, etc.*

FUTURE PERFECT.—*I shall or will have been loved.*

āmātus ēro, *I shall, etc.*

āmātī ērimus, *we shall, etc.*

āmātus ēris, *thou wilt, etc.*

āmātī ēritis, *you will, etc.*

āmātus ērit, *he will, etc.*

āmātī ērunt, *they will, etc.*

# SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

### Singular.

*āmer, I may be loved.*

*āmēris or -re, thou mayst, etc.*

*āmētur, he may be loved.*

### Plural.

*āmēmur, we may be loved.*

*āmēmīnī, you may be loved.*

*āmentur, they may be loved.*

## IMPERFECT.—*I might, should, or would be loved.*

*āmārer, I should be loved.*

*āmārēris or -re, thou, etc.*

*āmārētur, he would, etc.*

*āmārēmur, we should, etc.*

*āmārēmīnī, you would, etc.*

*āmārentur, they would, etc.*

## PERFECT.—*I may have been loved.*

*āmātus sim, I may, etc.*

*āmātus sis, thou mayst, etc.*

*āmātus sit, he may, etc.*

*āmātī simus, we may, etc.*

*āmātī sitis, you may, etc.*

*āmātī sint, they may, etc.*

## PLUPERFECT.—*I might, should, or would have been loved.*

*āmātus essem, I should, etc.*

*āmātus essēs, thou wouldst, etc.*

*āmātus esset, he would, etc.*

*āmātī essēmus, we should, etc.*

*āmātī essētis, you would, etc.*

*āmātī essent, they would, etc.*

## IMPERATIVE.

**PRES.** *āmāre, be thou loved.*

*āmāmīnī, be ye loved.*

**FUT.** *āmātor, thou shalt be loved.*

*āmātor, he shall be loved*

*or let him be loved.*

*āmantor, they shall be loved*

*or let them be loved.*

## INFINITIVE.

**PRES.** *āmārī, to be loved.*

**PERF.** *āmātus esse, to have been loved.*

**FUT.** *āmātum īrī, to be about to be loved.*

## PARTICIPLES.

**PERF.** *āmātus, a, um, loved or having been loved.*

**GERUNDIVE.** *āmandus, a, um, to be loved or worthy to be loved.*

**Note 1.**—The gerundive is also called the future passive participle.

**Note 2.**—The tenses of the subjunctive must frequently be rendered by other words than those given in the paradigms. Thus:

*sī sim, if I should be; eum sim, since I am.*

*sim, may I be; sīmus, let us be or may we be.*

*amet, let him love; ament, let them love or may they love.*

*sī essem, if I were; eum essem, when I was.*

**Note 3.**—Instead of the common forms of the compound tenses given above, the following are sometimes used:

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PERF.	āmātus fui,	āmātus fuërim,
	āmātus fuistī, etc.	āmātus fuëris, etc.
PLUP.	āmātus fuëram,	āmātus fuisset,
	āmātus fuërās, etc.	āmātus fuissēs, etc.
FUT. PERF.	āmātus fuëro,	
	āmātus fuëris, etc.	
		INFINITIVE.
		PERF. āmātus fuisset.

### FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

**Note 4.**—To aid the student in doing the exercises which follow, a tabular view of the formation of the tenses is here given.

From the stem of the present tense, *ama*, by suffixing the proper endings, are formed

	Active.	Passive.
IND. PRES.	amo,*	amer,*
IND. IMPERF.	amābam,	amābar,
IND. FUT.	amābo,	amāber,
SUBJ. PRES.	amem,*	amer,*
SUBJ. IMPERF.	amārem,	amārer,
IMPERAT. PRES.	amā,	amāre,
IMPERAT. FUT.	amāto,	amātor,
INFIN. PRES.	amāre.	amārī.

#### PART. PRES.

amans.

#### GERUND.

amandī.

#### GERUNDIVE.

amandus.

From the stem of the perfect, *amav-*, are formed

From the stem of the supine, *amat-*, are formed

	Active.	Passive.
IND. PERF.	amāvī,	amātus sum,
IND. PLUP.	amāvēram,	amātus ēram,

\* See 12.

	Active.	Passive.
IND. FUT. PERF.	amāvĕro,	amātus ĕro,
SUBJ. PERF.	amāvĕrim,	amātus sim,
SUBJ. PLUP.	amāvissem,	amātus essem,
INF. PERF.	amāvisse.	amātus esse.

Also, from the stem of the supine, amat-, are formed

	Active.	Passive.
INF. FUT.	amātūrus esse,	amātum īrī,
PART. FUT.	amātūrus.	
PART. PERF.		amātus.

## SUPINE.

ACC. amātum.	ABL. amātū.
--------------	-------------

## Exercises on Verbs of the First Conjugation.

## VOCABULARY.

laudo, āre, āvī, ātum, to praise.

rōgo, āre, āvī, ātum, to ask.

canto, āre, āvī, ātum, to sing.

spĕro, āre, āvī, ātum, to hope.

vulnĕro, āre, āvī, ātum, to wound.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

I. *Translate into English:*

1. Laudo, laudābam, laudābo, laudāvī, laudāvēram, laudāvĕro. 2. Rōgem, rōgārem, rōgāvĕrim, rōgāvissem, rōgans, rōgandō. 3. Cantāmus, cantāvīmus, cantābīmus, cantāvissēmus, cantābāmus. 4. Spĕrant, spĕrābunt, spĕrāvĕrant, spĕrābant, spĕrārent. 5. Laudant, laudātūrus, laudātis, laudāvissent, laudāvērant. 6. Laudā, cantat, rōgāret, spĕrāte, vulnĕrāvistī. 7. Vulnĕrātis, spĕrābis, cantāvērat, rōgāvisse, laudandī. 8. Laudāto, rōgābās, cantāvit, spĕrent, vulnĕrāvĕrim.

II. *Translate into Latin:*

1. I ask, I was asking, I shall ask, I have asked, I had

asked, I shall have asked. 2. I may praise, I might praise, I may have praised, I might have praised, to have praised. 3. He sings, we will sing, they had sung, you have sung, he was singing, they will have sung. 4. You had hoped, we might have hoped, they have hoped, let him hope, let\* us hope. 5. Let them praise, thou hast praised, we had praised, he will have praised, they might have praised. 6. He wounds, thou hopest, we have sung, he might have wounded, we might ask. 7. Hope ye, he shall ask, about to sing, by singing. 8. You may have wounded, we were praising, they ask, he will sing, hope thou.

### PASSIVE VOICE.

#### III. *Translate into English:*

1. Rōgor, rōgābar, rōgābor, rōgātus sum, rōgātus eram, rōgātus ero. 2. Lauder, laudārer, laudātus sim, laudātus essem, laudātus esse. 3. Vulnērāris, vulnērātus ērās, vulnērātus essēs, vulnērārī, vulnērātī sunt. 4. Rōgābātur, rōgātus, rōgārentur, rōgētur, rōgāmur. 5. Rōgātī ērāmus, laudātī estis, vulnērābuntur, cantābūtur, laudātus est. 6. Vulnērātur, laudātī ērītis, rōgātī ērant, laudātus sīs, laudentur. 7. Rōgātī sītis, vulnērātī essēmus, laudābīmīnī, laudātor, laudāre.

#### IV. *Translate into Latin:*

1. I am praised, I was praised, I shall be praised, I have been praised, I had been praised, I shall have been praised. 2. I may be asked, I might be asked, I may have been asked, I might have been asked, to have been asked. 3. Be ye praised, let them be praised, they might be praised, you were praised, you are praised. 4. He is wounded, they will be wounded, thou hast been wounded, he had been

---

\* See Note 2, p. 54.

wounded, they will have been wounded. 5. You might have been praised, worthy to be sung, thou art asked, he may have been wounded, having been asked. 6. He might be praised, may \* I be praised, may they be sung, let \* us be praised, they might have been wounded.

## VOCABULARY.

*libero, are, avi, atum, to liberate.*

*ambulo, are, avi, atum, to walk.*

*capto, are, avi, atum, to catch.*

*celo, are, avi, atum, to conceal.*

*colloco, are, avi, atum, to place, station.*

*mutō, are, avi, atum, to change.*

*flagito, are, avi, atum, to demand.*

*senator, oris, m., a senator.*

*sermo, onis, m., conversation.*

*legio, onis, f., a legion.*

*frumentum, i, n., grain, corn.*

*non, adv., not.*

*tempus, oris, n., time.*

*Romanus, i, m., a Roman.*

*avis, is, f., a bird.*

V. *Translate into English*, remembering that the **direct object** of an action is put in the **accusative** :

1. *Puella cantat.* 2. *Avēs cantant.* 3. *Mīles vulnerātus est.* 4. *Consulēs laudātī sunt.* 5. *Bōnus puer laudābītur.* 6. *Quis urbem liberābit?* 7. *Rēgīna ambulat in hortō.* 8. *Rex in hortum ambulāverat.* 9. *Mē rōgat.* 10. *Tē rōgāvit.* 11. *Nōs rōgābunt.* 12. *Caesar mīlītum virtūtem laudāvit.* 13. *Consul sēnātorēs rōgābat.* 14. *Ego rānās captābo.* 15. *Nōn cēlāvī sermōnem.* 16. *Caesar lēgiōnem collōcāvit.* 17. *Bōnōs puērōs laudāmus.* 18. *Tempus rēs mūtāt.* 19. *Rōmānī frūmentum flāgītābant.* 20. *Urbs liberāta † est.* 21. *Urbēs liberātae † sunt.* 22. *Illae puellae laudātae † erant.* 23. *Hae rēs mūtātae † erunt.* 24. *Consulis orātiōnēs laudātae † sunt.* 25. *Quis hās rānās captāvit?*

\* See Note 2, p. 54.

† In compound tenses, the participle must be of the same number and gender as the subject of the verb.

VI. *Translate into Latin :*

1. The girls are singing. 2. The birds were singing. 3. They will ask the consul. 4. Time has changed things. 5. They ask me. 6. The king was walking in\* the garden. 7. The commander praised the army. 8. The slave would have concealed the conversation. 9. The soldiers are wounded. 10. The soldiers have been wounded. 11. Caesar will demand corn. 12. Who has liberated the city? 13. The commander will place the legions. 14. The army will liberate the city. 15. Things have been changed. 16. These orations have been praised. 17. The cities had been liberated. 18. Times are changed. 19. Let† us demand corn. 20. Who has caught frogs? 21. Let† the commander praise the legions. 22. Time will have changed these things.

\* Use in. See foot-note, p. 49.

† See Note 2, p. 54.

## 32. THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
mōneo.	mōnēre.	mōnuī.	mōnītum.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.—*I advise, am advising, or do advise.*

Singular.	Plural.
mōneo,	mōnēmus,
mōnēs,	mōnētis,
mōnet.	mōnent.

IMPERFECT.—*I was advising, advised, or did advise.*

mōnēbam,	mōnēbāmus,
mōnēbās,	mōnēbātis,
mōnēbat.	mōnēbant.



FUTURE.—*I shall or will advise.*

## Singular.

mŏnēbo,  
mŏnēbis,  
mŏnēbit.

## Plural.

mŏnēbīmus,  
mŏnēbītis,  
mŏnēbunt.

PERFECT.—*I advised or I have advised.*

mŏnuī,  
mŏnuistī,  
mŏnuit.

mŏnuīmus,  
mŏnuistis,  
mŏnuērunt or -re.

PLUPERFECT.—*I had advised.*

mŏnuēram,  
mŏnuērās,  
mŏnuērat.

mŏnuērāmus,  
mŏnuērātis,  
mŏnuērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.—*I shall or will have advised.*

mŏnuēro,  
mŏnuēris,  
mŏnuērit.

mŏnuērīmus,  
mŏnuērītis,  
mŏnuērint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.—*I may advise ; may I advise.*

mŏneam,  
mŏneās,  
mŏneat.

mŏneāmus,  
mŏneātis,  
mŏneant.

IMPERFECT.—*I might, would, or should advise.*

mŏnērem,  
mŏnērēs,  
mŏnēret.

mŏnērēmus,  
mŏnērētis,  
mŏnērent.

PERFECT.—*I may have advised.*

mŏnuērīm,  
mŏnuēris,  
mŏnuērit.

mŏnuērīmus,  
mŏnuērītis,  
mŏnuērint.

PLUPERFECT.—*I might, would, or should have advised.*

Singular.  
mōnuissem,  
mōnuissēs,  
mōnuisset.

Plural.  
mōnuissēmus,  
mōnuissētis,  
mōnuissent.

### IMPERATIVE.

PRES. mōnē, <i>advise thou.</i>	mōnēte, <i>advise ye.</i>
FUT. mōnēto, <i>thou shalt advise or advise thou.</i>	mōnētōte, <i>you shall advise or advise ye.</i>
mōnēto, <i>he shall advise or let him advise.</i>	mōnento, <i>they shall advise or let them advise.</i>

### INFINITIVE.

### PARTICIPLES.

PRES. mōnēre, <i>to advise.</i>	PRES. mōnens, <i>advising.</i>
PERF. mōnuisse, <i>to have advised.</i>	
FUT. mōnītūrus esse, <i>to be about to advise.</i>	FUT. mōnītūrus, <i>a, um, about to advise.</i>

### GERUND.

### SUPINE.

GEN. mōnendī, <i>of advising.</i>	ACC. mōnītum, <i>to advise.</i>
DAT. mōnendō, <i>for advising.</i>	ABL. mōnītū, <i>to advise or to be advised.</i>
ACC. mōnendum, <i>advising.</i>	
ABL. mōnendō, <i>by advising.</i>	

## PASSIVE VOICE.

### PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
mōneor.	mōnērī.	mōnītus sum.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.—*I am advised.*

mōneor,	mōnēmur,
mōnēris or -re,	mōnēmīnī,
mōnētur.	mōnentur.

IMPERFECT.—*I was advised.*

Singular.	Plural.
mönēbar,	mönēbāmur,
mönēbāris or -re,	mönēbāmīnī,
mönēbātur.	mönēbantur.

FUTURE.—*I shall or will be advised.*

mönēbor,	mönēbīmur,
mönēbēris or -re,	mönēbīmīnī,
mönēbītur.	mönēbuntur.

PERFECT.—*I have been advised or I was advised.*

mönītus sum,	mönītī sūmus,
mönītus es,	mönītī estis,
mönītus est.	mönītī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.—*I had been advised.*

mönītus ēram,	mönītī ērāmus,
mönītus ērās,	mönītī ērātis,
mönītus ērat.	mönītī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.—*I shall or will have been advised.*

mönītus ēro,	mönītī ērīmus,
mönītus ēris,	mönītī ērītis,
mönītus ērit.	mönītī ērunt.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.—*I may be advised ; may I be advised.*

mōnear,	mōneāmur,
mōneāris or -re,	mōneāmīnī,
mōneātur.	mōneantur.

IMPERFECT.—*I might, would, or should be advised.*

mönērer,	mönērēmur,
mönērēris or -re,	mönērēmīnī,
mönērētur.	mönērentur.

PERFECT.—*I may have been advised.*

mönītus sim,	mönītī sīmus,
mönītus sīs,	mönītī sītis,
mönītus sit.	mönītī sint.

**PLUPERFECT.**—*I might, would, or should have been advised.*

Singular.	Plural.
mōnītus essem,	mōnītī essēmus,
mōnītus essēs,	mōnītī essētis,
mōnītus esset.	mōnītī essent.

### IMPERATIVE.

**PRES.** mōnēre, *be thou advised.* mōnēmīnī, *be ye advised.*

**FUT.** mōnētor, *thou shalt be advised.*

mōnētor, *he shall be advised or let him be advised.* mōnentor, *they shall be advised or let them be advised.*

### INFINITIVE.

**PRES.** mōnērī, *to be advised.*

**PERF.** mōnītus esse, *to have been advised.*

**FUT.** mōnītum īrī, *to be about to be advised.*

### PARTICIPLES.

**PERF.** mōnītus, a, um, *advised or having been advised.*

**GERUNDIVE.** mōnendus, a, um, *to be advised or worthy to be advised.*

### Exercises on Verbs of the First and Second Conjugations.

### VOCABULARY.

- hābeo, ēre, uī, ītum, to have.  
 terreo, ēre, uī, ītum, to frighten, terrify.  
 tāceo, ēre, uī, ītum, to be silent.  
 praebeo, ēre, uī, ītum, to furnish, give.  
 mēreo, ēre, uī, ītum, to deserve, merit.  
 dōceo, ēre, uī, otum, to teach, show.  
 dēleo, ēre, ēvī, ētum, to destroy.  
 vīdeo, ēre, vīdī, vīsum, to see.  
 fleo, ēre, ēvī, ētum, to weep, weep over.  
 arceo, ēre, uī, —, to keep off, drive off.  
 erro, āre, āvī, ātum, to wander, roam.  
 specto, āre, āvī, ātum, to look at.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

I. *Translate into English :*

1. Hābeo, hābēbam, hābēbo, hābuī, hābuēram, hābuēro.
2. Terream, terrērem, terruērim, terruissem, terruisse. 3. Tācet, tācuit, tācēbit, tācuērat, tācēbat, tācuērit. 4. Dōcēbāmus, dōcēbunt, dōcuistī, dōcēmus, dōcēret, dōcuissētis.
5. Mērēbīmus, mērītūrus, mērendō, mērērēmus, mērēbis, mēruīmus. 6. Dēlēš, dēlēbātis, dēlēvī, dēlēvērāmus, dēlērent, dēleat. 7. Vīdent, vīdēbant, vīdēbunt, vīdī, vīdēram, vīdēro. 8. Flēvī, flēvērim, flēvissem, flēto, flens, flētūrus esse. 9. Hābuistis, terruērant, tācēbītis, praebeant, mēruissēmus, dōcuērātis. 10. Errāvistī, spectāvērās, arcēbis, errāmus, spectābo, arcuīmus.

II. *Translate into Latin :*

1. I deserve, I was deserving, I shall deserve, I have deserved, I had deserved, I shall have deserved. 2. May I deserve, I would deserve, I may have deserved, I would have deserved, to have deserved. 3. Thou hast, we were having, he had had, they will have, you would have had, he may have had. 4. He sees, he has seen, they will see, you might see, let us see, let him see. 5. I have destroyed, he had destroyed, may they destroy, let them destroy, he would have destroyed, to have destroyed. 6. He was teaching, of teaching, by teaching, about to teach, we had taught, may we teach. 7. They have had, they will furnish, you would have terrified, we shall be silent, may they deserve, we have seen. 8. They were wandering, we shall drive off, he was looking at, they will weep, we shall have wandered, you had driven off.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

III. *Translate into English :*

1. Terreor, terrēbar, terrēbor, terrītus sum, terrītus

šram, terrĭtus šro. 2. Dŏcear, dŏcērer, doctus sim, doctus essem, doctus esse. 3. Vĭdētur, vĭdēbĭtur, vĭdēbātur, vĭsus sum, vĭsus est, vĭsĭ sunt. 4. Vĭsĭ šrāmus, vĭsĭ estis, vĭdeāmnĭ, vĭdērētur, vĭsus esset, vĭsĭ sĭmus. 5. Dēleāmur, dēlērēmĭnĭ, dēlētus sum, dēlētĭ essent, dēlēbĭtur, dēlētĭ šrunt. 6. Terrentor, terrĭtus, dēlendus, doctus šrās, vĭsus, terrĭtus essēs.

#### IV. *Translate into Latin:*

1. He has been seen, they are seen, thou wast seen, I shall be seen, we had been seen, you will have been seen. 2. We would have been taught, you will be taught, they had been taught, let him be taught, let us be taught, let them be taught. 3. Be ye terrified, he shall be terrified, to have been terrified, having been terrified, they had been terrified, he has been terrified. 4. He is destroyed, they have been destroyed, he had been destroyed, you would be destroyed, they may have been destroyed, worthy to be destroyed. 5. You are terrified, may you be taught, we shall have been seen, they would have been destroyed. 6. They had been terrified, we would be taught, thou hadst been seen, he shall be destroyed, worthy to be wept-over.

### VOCABULARY.

dŏlor, ōris, *m.*, pain, grief.  
gens, gentis, *f.*, a nation, race.  
umbra, *ae, f.*, a shadow, shade.  
mille, a thousand.  
fātum, *i, n.*, fate.  
grex, grēgis, *m.*, a flock, herd.  
herba, *ae, f.*, grass, herb.  
ā, *prep. with abl.*, from.  
hostis, *is, m. and f.*, an enemy.

vēr, vēris, *n.*, spring.  
porta, *ae, f.*, a gate.  
ādĭtus, ūs, *m.*, an approach.  
flōs, flōris, *m.*, a flower.  
praemium, *i, n.*, a reward.  
per, *prep. with acc.*, through.  
multus, *a, um*, much, many.  
Jūno, ōnis, *f.*, Juno, queen of the gods.

#### V. *Translate into English:*

1. Āvēs tācent. 2. Tua fāta dŏcēbo. 3. Terruit urbem,

terrui gentēs. 4. Haec urbs portās hābet. 5. Mille ōd-  
 ūtūs urbs hābēbat. 6. Vēr praebebat flōrēs. 7. Quis hōs  
 puērōs dōcuit? 8. Milītēs praemia mēruērāt. 9. Mille  
 grēgēs per herbās errābant. 10. Hostēs multās urbēs  
 dēlēvērāt. 11. Mille ōcūlī tē spectant. 12. Ōcūlī tuī  
 nōn tācuērunt. 13. Jūno flet dōlōrēs. 14. Umbra vīrī  
 vīsa est. 15. Tū, Jūpīter, hunc hōmīnem ā tuīs templīs  
 arcēbis.

### VI. Translate into Latin :

1. The sea is silent. 2. The woods have been silent. 3.  
 The enemy will have been terrified. 4. The sailors have  
 deserved rewards. 5. The boys were wandering through  
 the fields. 6. Spring has furnished flowers. 7. The shadow  
 is seen in\* the water. 8. A hundred eyes will look at you.  
 9. The city will have many approaches. 10. The Romans  
 had destroyed the town. 11. Soldiers are seen in\* the city.  
 12. Juno had wept-over her griefs. 13. Who has deserved  
 a reward? 14. We shall drive off the enemy. 15. Many  
 cities have been destroyed. 16. The girls have been taught.

\* See foot-note, p. 49.

## 33. THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

### ACTIVE VOICE.

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
rēgo.	rēgere.	rexī.	rectum.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.—*I rule, am ruling, or do rule.*

Singular.	Plural.
rēgo,	rēgīmus,
rēgis,	rēgītis,
rēgit.	rēgunt.

IMPERFECT.—*I was ruling, ruled, or did rule.*

Singular.	Plural.
rĕgĕbam,	rĕgĕbāmus,
rĕgĕbās,	rĕgĕbātis,
rĕgĕbat.	rĕgĕbant.

FUTURE.—*I shall or will rule.*

rĕgam,	rĕgĕmus,
rĕgēs,	rĕgētis,
rĕget.	rĕgent.

PERFECT.—*I have ruled or I ruled.*

rexī,	rexīmus,
rexistī,	rexistis,
rexit.	rexērunt or -re.

PLUPERFECT.—*I had ruled.*

rexĕram,	rexĕrāmus,
rexĕrās,	rexĕrātis,
rexĕrat.	rexĕrant.

FUTURE PERFECT.—*I shall or will have ruled.*

rexĕro,	rexĕrīmus,
rexĕris,	rexĕrītis,
rexĕrit.	rexĕrint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.—*I may rule ; may I rule.*

rĕgam,	rĕgāmus,
rĕgās,	rĕgātis,
rĕgat.	rĕgant.

IMPERFECT.—*I might, would, or should rule.*

rĕgĕrem,	rĕgĕrĕmus,
rĕgĕrēs,	rĕgĕrētis,
rĕgĕret.	rĕgĕrent.



PERFECT.—*I may have ruled.*

Singular.

rexĕrim,

rexĕris,

rexĕrit.

Plural.

rexĕrĭmus,

rexĕrĭtis,

rexĕrint.

PLUPERFECT.—*I might, would, or should have ruled.*

rexissem,

rexissēs,

rexisset.

rexissēmus,

rexissētis,

rexissent.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. rēge, *rule thou.*rēgite, *rule ye.*FUT. rēgĭto, *thou shalt rule or*  
*rule thou.*rēgĭtōte, *you shall rule or*  
*rule ye.*rēgĭto, *he shall rule or*  
*let him rule.*rēgunto, *they shall rule or let*  
*them rule.*

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. rēgĕre, *to rule.*PRES. rēgens, *ruling.*PERF. rexisse, *to have ruled.*FUT. rectūrus esse, *to be*  
*about to rule.*FUT. rectūrus, *a, um, about*  
*to rule.*

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

GEN. rēgendī, *of ruling.*Acc. rectum, *to rule.*DAT. rēgendō, *for ruling.*ABL. rectū, *to rule or to be*  
*ruled.*Acc. regendum, *ruling.*ABL. rēgendō, *by ruling.*

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.  
rēgor.Pres. Inf.  
rēgī.Perf. Ind.  
rectus sum.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.—*I am ruled.*

Singular.	Plural.
rēgor,	rēgimur,
rēgōris or -re,	rēgimīnī,
rēgītur.	rēguntur.

IMPERFECT.—*I was ruled.*

rēgēbar,	rēgēbāmur,
rēgēbāris or -re,	rēgēbāmīnī,
rēgēbātur.	rēgēbantur.

FUTURE.—*I shall or will be ruled.*

rēgar,	rēgēmur,
rēgōris or -re,	rēgēmīnī,
rēgētur.	rēgentur.

PERFECT.—*I have been ruled or I was ruled.*

rectus sum,	rectī sūmus,
rectus es,	rectī estis,
rectus est.	rectī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.—*I had been ruled.*

rectus ēram,	rectī ērāmus,
rectus ērās,	rectī ērātis,
rectus ērat.	rectī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.—*I shall or will have been ruled.*

rectus ēro,	rectī ērimus,
rectus ēris,	rectī ēritis,
rectus ērit.	rectī ērunt.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.—*I may be ruled ; may I be ruled.*

rēgar,	rēgāmur,
rēgāris or -re,	rēgāmīnī,
rēgātur.	rēgantur.

IMPERFECT.—*I might, would, or should be ruled.*

Singular.	Plural.
rēgērer,	rēgērēmur,
rēgērēris or -re,	rēgērēmīnī,
rēgērētur.	rēgērēntur.

PERFECT.—*I may have been ruled.*

rectus sim,	rectī sīmus,
rectus sīs,	rectī sītis,
rectus sit.	rectī sint.

PLUPERFECT.—*I might, would, or should have been ruled.*

rectus essem,	rectī essēmus,
rectus essēs,	rectī essētis,
rectus esset.	rectī essent.

### IMPERATIVE.

PRES. rēgēre, be thou ruled.	rēgīmīnī, be ye ruled.
FUT. rēgītōr, thou shalt be ruled.	
rēgītōr, he shall be ruled or let him be ruled.	rēguntōr, they shall be ruled or let them be ruled.

### INFINITIVE.

PRES. rēgī, to be ruled.
PERF. rectus esse, to have been ruled.
FUT. rectum īrī, to be about to be ruled.

### PARTICIPLES.

PERF. rectus, a, um, ruled or having been ruled.
GERUNDIVE. rēgendus, a, um, to be ruled or worthy to be ruled.

34. Some verbs of the third conjugation end in -io. They are inflected as follows :

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
căpio.	căpĕre.	cĕpĭ.	captum.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.—*I take, am taking, or do take.*

Singular.	Plural.
căpio,	căpĭmus,
căpis,	căpĭtis,
căpit.	căpiunt.

IMPERFECT.—*I was taking, did take, or took.*

căpiĕbam,	căpiĕbāmus,
căpiĕbās,	căpiĕbātis,
căpiĕbat.	căpiĕbant.

FUTURE.—*I shall or will take.*

căpiam,	căpiēmus,
căpiēs,	căpiētis,
căpiet.	căpient.

PERFECT.—*I have taken ; I took.*

cĕpĭ,	cĕpĭmus,
cĕpĭstĭ,	cĕpĭtis,
cĕpit.	cĕpĕrunt or -re.

PLUPERFECT.—*I had taken.*

cĕpĕram,	cĕpĕrāmus,
cĕpĕrās,	cĕpĕrātis,
cĕpĕrat.	cĕpĕrant.

FUTURE PERFECT.—*I shall or will have taken.*

cĕpĕro,	cĕpĕrĭmus,
cĕpĕris,	cĕpĕrĭtis,
cĕpĕrit.	cĕpĕrint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.—*I may take ; may I take.*

Singular.

cāpiam,

cāpiās,

cāpiat.

Plural.

cāpiāmus,

cāpiātis,

cāpīant.

IMPERFECT.—*I might, would, or should take.*

cāpērem,

cāpērēs,

cāpēret.

cāpērēmus,

cāpērētis,

cāpērent.

PERFECT.—*I may have taken.*

cēpērim,

cēpēris,

cēpērit.

cēpērīmus,

cēpērītis,

cēpērīnt.

PLUPERFECT.—*I might, would, or should have taken.*

cēpīsem,

cēpīssēs,

cēpīssēt.

cēpīssēmus,

cēpīssētis,

cēpīssēt.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. cāpe, take thou.

cāpīte, take ye.

FUT. cāpīto, thou shalt take  
or take thou.cāpītōte, you shall take or  
take ye.cāpīto, he shall take or  
let him take.cāpiunto, they shall take or  
let them take.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. cāpēre, to take.

PERF. cēpīsse, to have taken.

FUT. captūrus esse, to be  
about to take.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. cāpiens, taking.

FUT. captūrus, a, um, about  
to take.

## GERUND.

GEN. cāpiendī, *of taking.*  
 DAT. cāpiendō, *for taking.*  
 ACC. cāpiendum, *taking.*  
 ABL. cāpiendō, *by taking.*

## SUPINE.

ACC. captum, *to take.*  
 ABL. captū, *to take or to be taken.*

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.—*I am taken.*

Singular.	Plural.
cāpior,	cāpīmur,
cāpēris or -re,	cāpīminī,
cāpītur.	cāpiuntur.

IMPERFECT.—*I was taken.*

cāpiēbar,	cāpiēbāmur,
cāpiēbāris or -re,	cāpiēbāminī,
cāpiēbātur.	cāpiēbantur.

FUTURE.—*I shall or will be taken.*

cāpiar,	cāpiēmur,
cāpiēris or -re,	cāpiēmīnī,
cāpiētur.	cāpiēntur.

PERFECT.—*I have been taken or I was taken.*

captus sum,	captī sūmus,
captus es,	captī estis,
captus est.	captī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.—*I had been taken.*

captus ēram,	captī ērāmus,
captus ērās,	captī ērātis,
captus ērat.	captī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.—*I shall or will have been taken.*

captus ēro,	captī ērīmus,
captus ēris,	captī ērītis,
captus ērit.	captī ērunt.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.—*I may be taken ; may I be taken.*

Singular.

cāpiar,  
cāpiāris or -re,  
cāpiātur.

Plural.

cāpiāmur,  
cāpiāminī,  
cāpīantur.IMPERFECT.—*I might, would, or should be taken.*cāpērer,  
cāpērēris or -re,  
cāpērētur.cāpērēmur,  
cāpērēmīnī,  
cāpērentur.PERFECT.—*I may have been taken.*captus sim,  
captus sis,  
captus sit.captī sīmus,  
captī sītis,  
captī sint.PLUPERFECT.—*I might, would, or should have been taken.*captus essem,  
captus essēs,  
captus esset.captī essēmus,  
captī essētis,  
captī essent.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. cāpēre, *be thou taken.* cāpīminī, *be ye taken.*FUT. cāpītor, *thou shalt be taken.*cāpītor, *he shall be taken* or *let him be taken.*  
cāpiuntor, *they shall be taken* or *let them be taken.*

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. cāpī, *to be taken.*PERF. captus esse, *to have been taken.*FUT. captum īrī, *to be about to be taken.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PERF. captus, a, um, *taken or having been taken.*GERUNDIVE. cāpiendus, a, um, *to be taken or worthy to be taken.*

## Exercises on Verbs of the First, Second, and Third Conjugations.

### VOCABULARY.

scribo, ẽre, ipsi, iptum, to write.  
 mitto, ẽre, misi, missum, to send.  
 dũco, ẽre, uxi, uctum, to lead.  
 redũco, ẽre, uxi, uctum, to lead back.  
 evado, ẽre, asi, asum, to escape.  
 defendo, ẽre, fendi, fensum, to defend.  
 gẽro, ẽre, gessi, gestum, to carry on, wage.  
 jacio, ẽre, jeci, jactum, to throw.  
 facio, ẽre, feci, factum, to make, to do.  
 sulco, are, avi, atum, to furrow, plough.  
 timeo, ẽre, ui, —, to fear.  
 sedeo, ẽre, sedi, sessum, to sit.  
 tango, ẽre, tetigi, tactum, to touch.

### ACTIVE VOICE.

#### I. Translate into English :

1. Scribo, scribẽbam, scribam, scripsi, scripsẽram. 2. Mittẽbas, mittẽs, misit, miserant, miserĩmus. 3. Ducas, ducẽretis, duxissent, duxẽritis, duxisse. 4. Gẽrite, gẽrunt, gẽrens, gestũrus esse, gẽrendo. 5. Defendunt, defendẽtis, defendisti, defendẽritis, defendi. 6. Jaciẽbant, jaciẽtis, jeci, jeceratis. 7. Faciam, facẽret, fecerit, fecissẽmus, factũrus. 8. Tangẽre, tetigit, tetigisse, tetigẽro, tangẽrent. 9. Sulcabat, sulcabit, timuisti, sedebat, sedeat. 10. Tangunt, timẽtis, faciet, evasit, reduxẽras.

#### II. Translate into Latin :

1. We will write, they were writing, you will have written, we have written. 2. I have sent, thou hadst sent, we shall have sent, to have sent. 3. Let us lead, he would lead, they would have led, to be about to lead. 4. We escape, we shall escape, I have escaped, they had escaped. 5. He



wages, he will wage, he has waged, he had waged. 6. You would throw, he had thrown, throwing, by throwing. 7. Defend ye, may they defend, let them defend, let us defend. 8. We were fearing, I had feared, he will sit, he would sit. 9. He would have written, thou hast sent, let us escape, they had touched. 10. He ploughs, he has ploughed, we had ploughed, let him plough.

### PASSIVE VOICE.

#### III. *Translate into English:*

1. Mittuntur, mittēbātur, mittēmur, missī estis. 2. Dūcāmur, ductī sunt, ductī sītis, dūcēris. 3. Dēfendēbantur, dēfendētur, dēfensī sūmus, dēfendī. 4. Tangītur, tactus ērat, tangērēris, tactī essēmus. 5. Mittēbāmīnī, mittentur, missus es, missus ērit. 6. Ductī ērāmus, dūcīmur, ductī sunt, ductus esse. 7. Dēfendīmīnī, dēfendendus, dēfensī ērātis, dēfendēbar.

#### IV. *Translate into Latin:*

1. He is sent, you were sent, he will be sent, we have been sent. 2. Let them be led, we have been led, we would be led, he was led. 3. Be ye defended, they had been defended, we shall have been defended, we shall be defended. 4. They are touched, we had been touched, we are touched, they would have been touched. 5. Thou hadst been sent, I shall be sent, they have been sent, he would be sent. 6. May we be defended, to have been defended, having been defended, let us be defended.

### VOCABULARY.

Graecus, ī, m., a Greek.  
 ex, *prep. with abl.*, of, out of.  
 ad, *prep. with acc.*, to.  
 cum, *prep. with abl.*, with.  
 Dārius, ī, m., Darius.  
 taurus, ī, m., a bull.

lignum, ī, n., wood.  
 nāvis, is, f., a ship.  
 brēvis, e, short.  
 lēgātus, ī, m., an ambassador.  
 oūr, *adv.*, why?  
 nāsus, ī, m., the nose.

V. *Translate into English:*

1. Graeci æquum ex ligno fecerunt. 2. Nāvis sulcat æquās. 3. Brēviōrēs ēpistōlās ad tē scribo. 4. Milītēs sē dēfendunt. 5. Ūnus lūpus nōn tīmet multās ovēs. 6. Mūs bellum gērēbat cum rānā. 7. Trēs lēgātī missī sunt. 8. Exercītus rēductus est. 9. Dārīus cum magnā parte exercītūs ēvāsīt. 10. In cornū taurī sēdēbat musca. 11. Parvus mūs nāsū leōnis tētīgit. 12. Multae ēpistōlae scriptae sunt. 13. Lāpīdēs in oppīdum jactī sunt. 14. Multa bella gesta sunt. 15. Cūr tīmet flūmen tangēre?

VI. *Translate into Latin:*

1. Cicero wrote many letters. 2. The commander will lead the army. 3. Caesar carried on many wars. 4. Who has written this letter? 5. The king will not escape. 6. Caesar sent soldiers into the town. 7. Romans, defend your city. 8. The boys were throwing stones into the river. 9. We fear the arrival of the enemy. 10. Ships plough the sea. 11. Those letters have been written. 12. Our houses will have been defended.

## 35. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine
audio.	audīre.	audīvī.	audītum.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.—*I hear, do hear, or am hearing.*

Singular.	Plural.
audio,	audīmus,
audīs,	audītis,
audit.	audiunt.

IMPERFECT.—*I heard, was hearing, or did hear.*

Singular.	Plural.
audiēbam,	audiēbāmus,
audiēbās,	audiēbātis,
audiēbat.	audiēbant.

FUTURE.—*I shall or will hear.*

audiam,	audiēmus,
audiēs,	audiētis,
audiet.	audient.

PERFECT.—*I have heard or I heard.*

audivī,	audivīmus,
audivistī,	audivistis,
audivit.	audivērunt or -re.

PLUPERFECT.—*I had heard.*

audivēram,	audivērāmus,
audivērās,	audivērātis,
audivērat.	audivērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.—*I shall or will have heard.*

audivēro,	audivērīmus,
audivēris,	audivērītis,
audivērit.	audivērint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.—*I may hear ; may I hear.*

audiam,	audiāmus,
audiās,	audiātis,
audiat,	audiant.

IMPERFECT.—*I might, would, or should hear.*

audīrem,	audīrēmus,
audīrēs,	audīrētis,
audīret.	audīrent.

**PERFECT.—*I may have heard.***

Singular.  
 audivērim,  
 audivēris,  
 audivērit.

Plural.  
 audivērimus,  
 audivēritis,  
 audivērint.

**PLUPERFECT.—*I might, would, or should have heard.***

audivissem,  
 audivissēs,  
 audivisset.

audivissēmus,  
 audivissētis,  
 audivissent.

**IMPERATIVE.**

PRES. audī, *hear thou.*

audīte, *hear ye.*

FUT. audīto, *thou shalt hear*  
*or hear thou.*

audītōte, *ye shall hear or hear*  
*ye.*

audito, *he shall hear or*  
*let him hear.*

audiunto, *they shall hear or*  
*let them hear.*

**INFINITIVE.****PARTICIPLES.**

PRES. audīre, *to hear.*

PRES. audiens, *hearing.*

PERF. audivisse, *to have heard.*

FUT. auditūrus esse, *to be*  
*about to hear.*

FUT. auditūrus, a, um, *about*  
*to hear.*

**GERUND.****SUPINE.**

GEN. audiendī, *of hearing.*

ACC. auditum, *to hear.*

DAT. audiendō, *for hearing.*

ABL. auditū, *to hear or to be*  
*heard.*

ACC. audiendum, *hearing.*

ABL. audiendō, *by hearing.*

**PASSIVE VOICE.****PRINCIPAL PARTS.**

Pres. Ind.  
 audior.

Pres. Inf.  
 audīrī.

Perf. Ind.  
 auditus sum.

**INDICATIVE MOOD.****PRESENT TENSE.—*I am heard.***

audior,  
 audīris or -re,  
 audītur.

audīmur,  
 audīmīnī,  
 audiuntur.

IMPERFECT.—*I was heard.*

Singular.	Plural.
audiēbar,	audiēbāmur,
audiēbāris or -re,	audiēbāmīnī,
audiēbātur.	audiēbantur.

FUTURE.—*I shall or will be heard.*

audiar,	audiēmur,
audiēris or -re,	audiēmīnī,
audiētur.	audientur.

PERFECT.—*I have been heard or I was heard.*

auditus sum,	auditī sūmus,
auditus es,	auditī estis,
auditus est.	auditī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.—*I had been heard.*

auditus ēram,	auditī ērāmus,
auditus ērās,	auditī ērātis,
auditus ērat.	auditī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.—*I shall or will have been heard.*

auditus ēro,	auditī ērīmus,
auditus ēris,	auditī ērītis,
auditus ērit.	auditī ērunt.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.—*I may be heard; may I be heard.*

audiar,	audiāmur,
audiāris or -re,	audiāmīnī,
audiātur.	audiantur.

IMPERFECT.—*I might, would, or should be heard.*

audīrer,	audīrēmur,
audīrēris or -re,	audīrēmīnī,
audīrētur.	audīrentur.

**PERFECT.**—*I may have been heard.*

Singular.

auditus sim,

auditus sis,

auditus sit.

Plural.

auditi simus,

auditi sitis,

auditi sint.

**PLUPERFECT.**—*I might, would, or should have been heard.*

auditus essem,

auditus essēs,

auditus esset.

auditi essēmus,

auditi essētis,

auditi essent.

### IMPERATIVE.

**PRES.** audīre, *be thou heard.*      audimīnī, *be ye heard.*

**FUT.** audītor, *thou shalt be heard.*

audītor, *he shall be heard*      audiuntor, *they shall be heard*  
*heard or let him be heard*      *or let them be heard.*  
*heard.*

### INFINITIVE.

**PRES.** audīrī, *to be heard.*

**PERF.** audītus esse, *to have been heard.*

**FUT.** audītum irī, *to be about to be heard.*

### PARTICIPLES.

**PERF.** audītus, a, um, *heard or having been heard.*

**GERUNDIVE.** audīendus, a, um, *to be heard or worthy to be heard.*

### Exercises on Verbs of the Four Conjugations.

### VOCABULARY.

custōdio, īre, īvī, ītum, *to guard.*

mūnio, īre, īvī, ītum, *to fortify.*

vestio, īre, īvī, ītum, *to clothe.*

vincio, īre, vinxī, vinetum, *to bind.*

haurio, īre, hausī, haustum, *to draw.*

fērio, īre, —, —, *to strike.*

vēnio, īre, vēnī, ventum, *to come.*

expecto, āre, āvī, ātum, *to await, expect.*

mōveo, ēre, mōvī, mōtum, *to move.*

rēlinquo, ēre, līquī, lictum, *to leave.*

## ACTIVE VOICE.

I. *Translate into English :*

1. Custōdio, custōdiēbam, custōdiam, custōdīvī. 2. Mūnīvēram, mūnīvēro, mūniam, mūnīrem. 3. Vinciunt, vicient, vinxī, vinxērat. 4. Hauriēbat, hauriēmus, hausērunt, hausērant. 5. Vestiētis, vestīrētis, vestīvissēmus, vestī. 6. Vēniēbātis, vēnērāmus, vēnissent, ventūrus esse. 7. Custōdiunto, custōdiendō, custōdītūrus, custōdiens. 8. Vinxīmus, hausērāmus, haustūrus, hausisse. 9. Mōvēbo, mōvī, mōveam, mōvissem. 10. Rēlinquēmus, rēliquīmus, rēlinquāmus, rēlinquērēmus. 11. Fērīmus, expectābīmus, rēlinquērātis, mōveātis. 12. Haurīs, vēnistī, vinxit, mūnīmus.

II. *Translate into Latin :*

1. We guard, we have guarded, let him guard, may you guard. 2. They were fortifying, he will have fortified, they will fortify. 3. He will clothe, thou wouldst clothe, we would have clothed, clothe ye. 4. We shall bind, we have bound, you had bound, they will have bound. 5. He draws, we were drawing, you will draw, I have drawn. 6. He will have drawn, you had drawn, may we draw, we would draw. 7. They were coming, I shall come, we have come, let us come. 8. I had expected, we have moved, they had left, you will strike. 9. By fortifying, of guarding, about to draw, to be about to bind. 10. Guard ye, to have moved, about to move, await thou.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

III. *Translate into English :*

1. Custōdītus es, custōdiēbantur, custōdītī ērāmus, custōdiāmīnī. 2. Mūnītur, mūnītī ērīmus, mūniantur, mūnītī essent. 3. Vestīmīnī, vestītī estis, vestītī sint, ves-

tītus essem. 4. Fēriātur, fēriētur, fēriēbāris, fērītur. 5. Mōvērī, mōtus esse, mōtus sīs, movēātur. 6. Rēlinquar, relictus sum, rēlinquērēmīnī, rēlinquāmīnī. 7. Haustus, custōdiendus, mūnītum īrī, mūnītus. 8. Vestīrī, vestīrer, vestītī ērant, vestiēmīnī. 9. Rēlinquēris, mōvēbītur, exspectātus es, vinciētur. 10. Rēlictī ērāmus, mōtus est, exspectātī ērant, vestiāmur.

#### IV. *Translate into Latin:*

1. They have been guarded, he was guarded, you had been guarded, may he be guarded. 2. They are fortified, they will have been fortified, let us be fortified, he would have been fortified. 3. They are clothed, we have been clothed, you may have been clothed, he would have been clothed. 4. May they be struck, we shall be struck, he was struck, thou art struck. 5. To have been moved, having been moved, he may have been moved, may you be moved. 6. Thou wilt be left, he has been left, we would be left, may he be left. 7. Worthy to be fortified, having been guarded, to be about to be drawn, having been bound. 8. To be guarded, I would be fortified, we had been clothed, they will be clothed.

### VOCABULARY.

*lāna*, ae, *f.*, wool.

*Verres*, is, *m.*, Verres.

*fācīnus*, ōris, *n.*, a crime.

*pūtēs*, ī, *m.*, a well.

*ībi*, *adv.*, there.

*fulgur*, ūris, *n.*, lightning.

*castra*, ōrum, *n.*, a camp. *In this sense, used only in the plural.*

*Rōmānus*, a, um, Roman.

*ex*, *prep. with abl.*, from, out of.

*rīvus*, ī, *m.*, a brook.

*lōcus*, ī, *m.*, a place.

#### V. *Translate into English:*

1. *Lānae nōs vestiunt.* 2. *Mīlītēs urbem custōdient.* 3. *Dōmum meam mūnīvī.* 4. *Fulgūra montēs fēriunt.* 5. *Verres vinxit cīvem Rōmānum.* 6. *Fācīnus est vin-*



cīre cīvem Rōmānum. 7. Servī āquam ex pŭtēō hauri-  
ēbant. 8. Ad rīvum lŭpus vērerat. 9. Urbs mŭnīta ērit.  
10. Insŭla custōdīta est. 11. Rōmānī hostium adventum  
exspectābant. 12. Duās Ÿbi lēgiōnēs rēliquit. 13. Ex eō  
lōcō castra mōta sunt.

#### VI. Translate into Latin:

1. The meadows clothe themselves. 2. We shall guard  
our house. 3. The soldiers had fortified the city. 4. Who  
will bind a Roman citizen? 5. Verres had bound a Roman  
citizen. 6. The slave had drawn water from the well. 7.  
Our city has been guarded. 8. We shall await the arrival  
of the Romans. 9. The enemy will move their camp. 10.  
Caesar had left three legions there.

### DEPONENT VERBS.

**36.** Deponent verbs have the inflections of the passive  
voice with the meanings of the active; as, *mīror*, *I admire*;  
*vĕreor*, *I fear*; *sĕquor*, *I follow*; *partior*, *I divide*. They  
have the participles of both voices.

#### Deponent Verbs of the Four Conjugations.

##### PRINCIPAL PARTS.

	Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Participle.
1.	<b>mīror.</b>	<b>mīrārī.</b>	<b>mīrātus.</b>

##### INDICATIVE MOOD.

<b>PRES.</b>	<b>mīror, mīrāris or -re, etc., I admire, etc.</b>
<b>IMPERF.</b>	<b>mīrābar, mīrābāris, etc., I was admiring, etc.</b>
<b>FUT.</b>	<b>mīrābor, mīrābĕris, etc., I shall admire, etc.</b>
<b>PERF.</b>	<b>mīrātus sum, etc., I have admired, etc.</b>
<b>PLUP.</b>	<b>mīrātus ēram, etc., I had admired, etc.</b>
<b>FUT. PERF.</b>	<b>mīrātus ēro, etc., I shall have admired, etc.</b>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	mīrer, mīrēris, etc., <i>I may admire, etc.</i>
IMPERF.	mīrārer, mīrārēris, etc., <i>I would admire, etc.</i>
PERF.	mīrātus sim, etc., <i>I may have admired, etc.</i>
PLUP.	mīrātus essem, etc., <i>I would have admired.</i>

## IMPERATIVE.

	Singular.	Plural.
PRES.	mīrāre, <i>admire thou.</i>	mīrāminī, <i>admire ye.</i>
FUT.	mīrātor, <i>thou shalt admire, etc.</i>	
	mīrātor, <i>he shall admire, etc.</i>	mīrantor, <i>they shall admire or let them admire.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	mīrārī, <i>to admire.</i>
PERF.	mīrātus esse, <i>to have admired.</i>
FUT.	mīrātūrus esse, <i>to be about to admire.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	mīrans, <i>admiring.</i>
FUT.	mīrātūrus, <i>about to admire.</i>
PERF.	mīrātus, <i>having admired.</i>
GERUNDIVE.	mīrandus, <i>to be admired or worthy to be admired.</i>

## GERUND.

## SUPINES.

GEN.	mīrandī, <i>of admiring.</i>	ACC.	mīrātum, <i>to admire.</i>
DAT.	mīrandō, <i>etc.</i>	ABL.	mīrātū, <i>to admire or to be admired.</i>

## Synopsis of Deponents of the Second, Third, and Fourth Conjugations.

### PRINCIPAL PARTS.

	Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Participle.
2.	<b>věreor,</b>	<b>věrerī,</b>	<b>věrītus.</b>
3.	<b>sęquor,</b>	<b>sęquī,</b>	<b>sęcūtus.</b>
4.	<b>partior,</b>	<b>partīrī,</b>	<b>partītus.</b>

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

<b>PRES.</b>	<b>věreor,</b>	<b>sęquor,</b>	<b>partior,</b>
<b>IMPERF.</b>	<b>věrebar,</b>	<b>sęquēbar,</b>	<b>partiēbar,</b>
<b>FUT.</b>	<b>věrebor,</b>	<b>sęquar,</b>	<b>partiar,</b>
<b>PERF.</b>	<b>věrītus sum,</b>	<b>sęcūtus sum,</b>	<b>partītus sum,</b>
<b>PLUP.</b>	<b>věrītus ęram,</b>	<b>sęcūtus ęram,</b>	<b>partītus ęram,</b>
<b>FUT. PERF.</b>	<b>věrītus ęro.</b>	<b>sęcūtus ęro.</b>	<b>partītus ęro.</b>

### SUBJUNCTIVE.

<b>PRES.</b>	<b>věrear,</b>	<b>sęquar,</b>	<b>partiar,</b>
<b>IMPERF.</b>	<b>věrerer,</b>	<b>sęquērer,</b>	<b>partīrer,</b>
<b>PERF.</b>	<b>věrītus sim,</b>	<b>sęcūtus sim,</b>	<b>partītus sim,</b>
<b>PLUP.</b>	<b>věrītus essem.</b>	<b>sęcūtus essem.</b>	<b>partītus essem.</b>

### IMPERATIVE.

<b>PRES.</b>	<b>věre, etc.,</b>	<b>sęqu, etc.,</b>	<b>parti, etc.,</b>
<b>FUT.</b>	<b>věretor, etc.</b>	<b>sęcutor, etc.</b>	<b>partitor, etc.</b>

### INFINITIVE.

<b>PRES.</b>	<b>věrerī,</b>	<b>sęquī,</b>	<b>partīrī,</b>
<b>PERF.</b>	<b>věrītus esse,</b>	<b>sęcūtus esse,</b>	<b>partītus esse,</b>
<b>FUT.</b>	<b>věrītūrus esse.</b>	<b>sęcūtūrus esse.</b>	<b>partītūrus esse.</b>

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	vĕrens,	sĕquens,	partiens,
FUT.	vĕrĭtŭrus,	sĕcŭtŭrus,	partĭtŭrus,
PERF.	vĕrĭtus,	sĕcŭtus,	partĭtus,
GERUNDIVE.	vĕrendus.	sĕquendus.	partiendus.

## GERUND.

GEN.	vĕrendĭ,	sĕquendĭ,	partiendĭ,
DAT.	vĕrendō, etc.	sĕquendō, etc.	partiendō, etc.

## SUPINES.

ACC.	vĕrĭtum,	sĕcŭtum,	partĭtum,
ABL.	vĕrĭtŭ.	sĕcŭtŭ.	partĭtŭ.

## SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS.

37. **Semi-deponents** or half-deponents have the passive form in the perfect tense and in those formed from it; as,

*audeo, audĕre, ausus sum, to dare;*

*gaudeo, gaudĕre, gāvĭsus sum, to rejoice.*

## PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS.

38. Any future active participle combined with the tenses of **sum** forms an active periphrastic conjugation; and any future passive participle (or gerundive) similarly combined forms a passive periphrastic conjugation.

## I. The Active Periphrastic Conjugation.

## INDICATIVE MOOD. SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	āmātŭrus sum, <i>I am</i>	} <i>about to love.</i>	āmātŭrus sim,
	āmātŭrus es, <i>thou art</i>		āmātŭrus sīs,
	āmātŭrus est, <i>he is</i>		āmātŭrus sit,
	āmātŭrī sŭmus, <i>we are</i>		āmātŭrī sĭmus,
	āmātŭrī estis, <i>you are</i>		āmātŭrī sītis,
	āmātŭrī sunt, <i>they are</i>		āmātŭrī sint.

IMPERF.	āmatūrus ǫram, <i>I was about to love, etc.</i>	āmatūrus essem, āmatūrus essēs, etc.
FUT.	āmatūrus ǫro, <i>I shall be about to love, etc.</i>	
PERF.	āmatūrus fui, <i>I have been about to love, etc.</i>	āmatūrus fuërim, etc.
PLUP.	āmatūrus fuëram, <i>I had been, etc.</i>	āmatūrus fuissem, etc.
FUT. PERF.	āmatūrus fuëro, <i>I shall have been about to love.</i>	

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	āmatūrus esse, <i>to be about to love.</i>
PERF.	āmatūrus fuisse, <i>to have been about to love.</i>

## II. The Passive Periphrastic Conjugation.

## INDICATIVE MOOD. SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	āmandus sum, <i>I have</i> āmandus es, <i>thou hast</i> āmandus est, <i>he has</i> āmandī sūmus, <i>we have</i> āmandī estis, <i>you have</i> āmandī sunt, <i>they have</i>	} <i>to be loved.</i>	āmandus sim, āmandus sīs, āmandus sit, āmandī sīmus, āmandī sītis, āmandī sint.
IMPERF.	āmandus ǫram, <i>I had to be loved, etc.</i>		āmandus essem, āmandus essēs, etc.
FUT.	āmandus ǫro, <i>I shall have to be loved, etc.</i>		
PERF.	āmandus fui, <i>I have had to be loved, etc.</i>		āmandus fuërim, etc.
PLUP.	āmandus fuëram, <i>I had deserved to be loved.</i>		āmandus fuissem, etc.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	āmandus esse, <i>to have or deserve to be loved.</i>
PERF.	āmandus fuisse, <i>to have deserved to be loved.</i>

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

39. The following irregular verbs are in common use:

1. *Possum*, *I am able*, *I can*, a compound of *pōtis*, *able*, and *sum*, is thus conjugated:

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
<i>possum.</i>	<i>posse.</i>	<i>pōtuī.</i>	_____.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>possum, I can, I am able.</i>	<i>possumus, we can.</i>
<i>pōtes, thou canst.</i>	<i>pōtestis, you can.</i>
<i>pōtest, he can.</i>	<i>possunt, they can.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

<i>pōtēram, I could, I was able.</i>	<i>pōtērāmus, we could.</i>
<i>pōtērās, thou couldst.</i>	<i>pōtērātis, you could.</i>
<i>pōtērat, he could.</i>	<i>pōtērant, they could.</i>

## FUTURE.

<i>pōtēro, I shall be able.</i>	<i>pōtērīmus, we shall be able.</i>
<i>pōtēris, thou wilt be able.</i>	<i>pōtērītis, you will be able.</i>
<i>pōtērit, he will be able.</i>	<i>pōtērunt, they will be able.</i>

PERFECT.—*I have been able, I could.*

<i>pōtuī,</i>	<i>pōtuīmus,</i>
<i>pōtuistī,</i>	<i>pōtuistis,</i>
<i>pōtuit.</i>	<i>pōtuērunt or pōtuēre.</i>

PLUPERFECT.—*I had been able.*

<i>pōtuēram,</i>	<i>pōtuērāmus,</i>
<i>pōtuērās,</i>	<i>pōtuērātis,</i>
<i>pōtuērat.</i>	<i>pōtuērant.</i>

**FUTURE PERFECT.**—*I shall have been able.*

Singular.

põtuõro,  
põtuõris,  
põtuõrit.

Plural.

põtuõrĩmus,  
põtuõrĩtis,  
põtuõrint.

### SUBJUNCTIVE.

**PRESENT.**—*I may be able ; may I be able.*

possim,  
possĩs,  
possit.

possĩmus,  
possĩtis,  
possint.

**IMPERFECT.**—*I might, should, or would be able.*

possem,  
possēs,  
posset.

possēmus,  
possētis,  
possent.

**PERFECT.**—*I may have been able.*

põtuõrim,  
põtuõris,  
põtuõrit.

põtuõrĩmus,  
põtuõrĩtis,  
põtuõrint.

**PLUPERFECT.**—*I might, should, or would have been able.*

põtuissẽm,  
põtuissēs,  
põtuisset.

põtuissēmus,  
põtuissētis,  
põtuissent.

### INFINITIVE.

**PRES.** posse, *to be able.*

**PERF.** põtuisse, *to have been able.*

### PARTICIPIAL ADJECTIVE.

põtens, *able, powerful.*

2. *Prōsum*, *I help, I benefit*, is inflected like *sum*, but inserts *d* before a vowel. Thus :

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
<i>prōsum.</i>	<i>prōdesse.</i>	<i>prōfuī.</i>	_____.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.—*I benefit, am benefiting, or do benefit.*

Singular.

*prōsum,*  
*prōdes,*  
*prōdest.*

Plural.

*prōsūmus,*  
*prōdestis,*  
*prōsunt.*

IMPERFECT.—*I was benefiting, benefited, or did benefit.*

*prōdēram,*  
*prōdērās,*  
*prōdērat.*

*prōdērāmus,*  
*prōdērātis,*  
*prōdērant.*

FUTURE.—*I shall or will benefit.*

*prōdēro,*  
*prōdēris,*  
*prōdērit.*

*prōdērīmus,*  
*prōdērītis,*  
*prōdērunt.*

PERFECT.—*I have benefited or I benefited.*

*prōfuī,*  
*prōfuistī,*  
*prōfuit.*

*prōfuīmus,*  
*prōfuistis,*  
*prōfuērunt or -re.*

PLUPERFECT.—*I had benefited.*

*prōfuērām, etc.*

*prōfuērāmus, etc.*

FUTURE PERFECT.—*I shall or will have benefited.*

*prōfuēro, etc.*

*prōfuērīmus, etc.*



SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.—*I may benefit or may I benefit.*

Singular.	Plural.
prōsim,	prōsīmus,
prōsīs,	prōsītis,
prōsit.	prōsint.

IMPERFECT.—*I might, should, or would benefit.*

prōdessem,	prōdessēmus,
prōdessēs,	prōdessētis,
prōdesset.	prōdessent.

PERFECT.—*I may have benefited.*

prōfuērim, etc.	prōfuērīmus, etc.
-----------------	-------------------

PLUPERFECT.—*I might, should, or would have benefited.*

prōfuissem, etc.	prōfuissēmus, etc.
------------------	--------------------

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. prōdes, <i>benefit thou.</i>	prōdeste,
FUT. prōdesto,	prōdestōte,
prōdesto,	prōsunto.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. prōdesse, <i>to benefit.</i>
PERF. prōfuisse, <i>to have benefited.</i>
FUT. prōfūtūrus esse, <i>to be about to benefit.</i>

FUTURE PARTICIPLE.

prōfūtūrus, *about to benefit.*

**Note.**—Like *sum* are conjugated its compounds *absum, adsum, dēsum, insum, intersum, obsum, praesum, sūpersum.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
3. vŏlo,	velle,	vŏluī,	———, to wish, to be willing.
4. nŏlo,	nolle,	nŏluī,	———, to be unwilling.
5. mālo,	malle,	māluī,	———, to prefer.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

SING.	vŏlo,	nŏlo,	mālo,
	vīs,	nŏnvīs,	māvīs,
	vult,	nŏnvult,	māvult,
PLUR.	vŏlŭmus,	nŏlŭmus,	mālŭmus,
	vultis,	nŏnvultis,	māvultis,
	vŏlunt.	nŏlunt.	mālunt.

## IMPERFECT.

SING.	vŏlēbam,	nŏlēbam,	mālēbam,
	vŏlēbās,	nŏlēbās,	mālēbās,
	vŏlēbat.	nŏlēbat.	mālēbat, etc.

## FUTURE.

SING.	vŏlam,	nŏlam,	mālam,
	vŏlēs,	nŏles,	mālēs,
	vŏlet.	nŏlet.	mālet, etc.

## PERFECT.

SING.	vŏluī,	nŏluī,	māluī,
	vŏluistī.	nŏluistī.	māluistī, etc.

## PLUPERFECT.

SING.	vŏluěřam,	nŏluěřam,	māluěřam,
	vŏluěřās.	nŏluěřās.	māluěřās, etc.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

SING.	vŏluěřo,	nŏluěřo,	māluěřo,
	vŏluěřis.	nŏluěřis.	māluěřis, etc.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

SING.	vĕlim,	nōlim,	mālim,
	vĕlīs,	nōlīs,	mālīs,
	vĕlit,	nōlit,	mālit,
PLUR.	vĕlīmus,	nōlīmus,	mālīmus,
	vĕlītis,	nōlītis,	mālītis,
	vĕlint.	nōlint.	mālint.

## IMPERFECT.

SING.	vellem,	nollem,	mallem,
	vellēs,	nollēs,	mallēs,
	vellet,	nollet,	mallet.
PLUR.	vellēmus,	nollēmus,	mallēmus,
	vellētis,	nollētis,	mallētis,
	vellent.	nollent.	mallent.

## PERFECT.

SING.	vōluĕrim.	nōluĕrim.	māluĕrim.
-------	-----------	-----------	-----------

## PLUPERFECT.

SING.	vōluissem.	nōluissem.	māluissem.
-------	------------	------------	------------

IMPERATIVE (*of nōlo only*).

PRES.	nōlī,	nōlīte,
FUT.	nōlīto,	nōlītōte,
	nōlīto.	nōlunto.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	velle,	nolle,	malle.
PERF.	vōluisse,	nōluisse,	māluisse.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	vōlens,	nōlens,	_____.
-------	---------	---------	--------

Note.—*Nōlo* is a compound of *nōn* and *vōlo*; *mālo*, of *māgis* (*more*) and *vōlo*.

6. *Fēro, I bear, I bring*, is thus conjugated:

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.
<b>fēro.</b>	<b>ferre.</b>	<b>fēror.</b>	<b>ferri.</b>
Perf. Ind.	Supine.		Perf. Ind.
<b>tūli.</b>	<b>lātum.</b>		<b>lātus sum.</b>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I bear, etc.*

*I am borne.*

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
<b>fēro,</b>	<b>fērīmus,</b>	<b>fēror,</b>	<b>fērīmur,</b>
<b>fers,</b>	<b>fertis,</b>	<b>ferris or -re,</b>	<b>fērīmnī,</b>
<b>fert,</b>	<b>fērunt.</b>	<b>fertur,</b>	<b>fēruntur.</b>

## IMPERFECT.

*I was bearing, etc.*

*I was borne.*

<b>fērēbam,</b>	<b>fērēbāmus,</b>	<b>fērēbar,</b>	<b>fērēbāmur,</b>
<b>fērēbās,</b>	<b>fērēbātis,</b>	<b>fērēbāris,</b>	<b>fērēbāmnī,</b>
<b>fērēbat,</b>	<b>fērēbant.</b>	<b>fērēbātur,</b>	<b>fērēbantur.</b>

## FUTURE.

*I shall bear.*

*I shall be borne.*

<b>fēram,</b>	<b>fērēmus,</b>	<b>fērar,</b>	<b>fērēmur,</b>
<b>fērēs,</b>	<b>fērētis,</b>	<b>fērēris,</b>	<b>fērēmīnī,</b>
<b>fēret,</b>	<b>fērent.</b>	<b>fērētur,</b>	<b>fērentur.</b>

## PERFECT.

*I have borne, etc.*

*I have been borne, etc.*

<b>tūli,</b>	<b>tūlīmus,</b>	<b>lātus sum,</b>	<b>lātī sūmus,</b>
<b>tūlistī,</b>	<b>tūlistis,</b>	<b>lātus es,</b>	<b>lātī estis,</b>
<b>tūlit,</b>	<b>tūlērunt (re).</b>	<b>lātus est,</b>	<b>lātī sunt.</b>

PLUPERFECT.

*I had borne.*

*I had been borne.*

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
tūlēram,	tūlērāmus,	lātus ēram,	lātī ērāmus,
tūlērās,	tūlērātis,	lātus ērās,	lātī ērātis,
tūlērat,	tūlērant.	lātus ērat,	lātī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have borne.*

*I shall have been borne.*

tūlēro,	tūlērīmus,	lātus ēro,	lātī ērīmus,
tūlēris,	tūlērītis,	lātus ēris,	lātī ērītis,
tūlērit,	tūlērint.	lātus ērit,	lātī ērunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*I may bear.*

*I may be borne.*

fēram,	fērāmus,	fērar,	fērāmur,
fērās,	fērātis,	fērāris,	fērāmīnī,
fērat,	fērant.	fērātur,	fērantur.

IMPERFECT.

*I should bear.*

*I should be borne.*

ferrem,	ferrēmus,	ferrer,	ferrēmur,
ferrēs,	ferrētis,	ferrēris,	ferrēmīnī,
ferret,	ferrent.	ferrētur,	ferrentur.

PERFECT.

*I may have borne.*

*I may have been borne.*

tūlērim,	tūlērīmus,	lātus sim,	lātī sīmus,
tūlēris,	tūlērītis,	lātus sīs,	lātī sītis,
tūlērit,	tūlērint.	lātus sit,	lātī sint.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I should have borne.**I should have been borne.*

Singular.

Plural.

Singular.

Plural.

tūlissem,

tūlissemus,

lātus essem,

lātī essēmus,

tūlissēs,

tūlissētis,

lātus essēs,

lātī essētis,

tūlisset,

tūlissent.

lātus esset,

lātī essent.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. fer,

ferte,

ferre,

fērīmnī,

FUT. fertō,

fertōte,

fector,

ferto,

fērunto.

fector,

fēruntor.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. ferre, *to bear.*ferrī, *to be borne.*PERF. tūlissee, *to have borne.*lātus esse, *to have been borne.*FUT. lātūrus esse, *to be, etc.*lātum īrī, *to be about, etc.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. fērens, *bearing.*PERF. lātus, *borne, etc.*FUT. lātūrus, *about to bear.*GERUNDIVE. fērendus, *to be borne.*

## GERUND.

## SUPINES.

GEN. fērendī, *of bearing.*ACC. lātum, *to bear.*DAT. fērendō, *etc.*ABL. lātū, *to bear, etc.*

**Note.**—In like manner are inflected the compounds of *fēro*.

7. **Fīo**, *I am made, I become*, used as the **passive** of *fācio*, and

8. **Eo**, *I go*, are thus conjugated :

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.

Pres. Inf.

Pres. Ind.

Pres. Inf.

fīo.

fīērī.

eo.

īre.

Perf. Ind.

Perf. Ind.

Supine.

factus sum

īvī or iī.

ītum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
fīo,	fīmus,	eo,	īmus,
fīs,	fītis,	īs,	ītis,
fit,	fīunt.	it,	ēunt.

IMPERFECT.

fīebam,	fīebāmus,	ībam,	ībāmus,
fīebās,	fīebātis,	ībās,	ībātis,
fīebat,	fīebant.	ībat,	ībant.

FUTURE.

fīam,	fīēmus,	ībo,	ībīmus,
fīēs,	fīētis,	ībīs,	ībītis,
fīet,	fīent.	ībit,	ībunt.

PERFECT.

factus sum,	factī sūmus,	īvī,	īvīmus,
factus es,	factī estis,	īvistī,	īvistis,
factus est,	factī sunt.	īvit,	īvērunt (re).

PLUPERFECT.

factus ēram, etc.	īvēram, etc.
-------------------	--------------

FUTURE PERFECT.

factus ēro, etc.	īvēro, etc.
------------------	-------------

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

fīam,	fīāmus,	ēam,	ēāmus,
fīas,	fīātis,	ēās,	ēātis,
fīat,	fīant.	ēat,	ēant.

## IMPERFECT.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
fĭĕrem,	fĭĕrĕmus,	ĭrem,	ĭrĕmus,
fĭĕrĕs,	fĭĕrĕtis,	ĭrĕs,	ĭrĕtis,
fĭĕret,	fĭĕrent.	ĭret,	ĭrent.

## PERFECT.

factus sim, etc.	ĭvĕrim, etc.
------------------	--------------

## PLUPERFECT.

factus essem, etc.	ĭvissem, etc.
--------------------	---------------

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. fĭ,	fĭte,	ĭ,	ĭte,
FUT. fĭto,	fĭtōte,	ĭto,	ĭtōte,
	fĭunto.	ĭto,	ĕunto.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. fĭĕrĭ, <i>to become.</i>	ĭre, <i>to go.</i>
PERF. factus esse,	ĭvisse, <i>to have gone.</i>
FUT. factum ĭrĭ.	ĭtūrus esse, <i>to be about, etc.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

PERF. factus.	PRES. ĭens (GEN. ĕuntis).
GERUNDIVE. fāciendus.	FUT. ĭtūrus, a, um.

## GERUND.

GEN. ĕundĭ, <i>of going.</i>
DAT. ĕundō, etc.

**Note.**—The perfect ĭvĭ is frequently contracted into ĭĭ; and, in general, *v* with the following vowel is frequently omitted in the perfect tense and in those formed from it; as, *amāram* = *āmāvĕram*, etc.



## Exercises on the Irregular Verba.

I. *Translate into English :*

1. Vīs, vōluērat, vēlim, vōluit, vōluissēmus. 2. Non-vult, nōlī, nollētis, nōluēro, nōlens. 3. Malle, mālēbās, māvīs, māluērim, mālent. 4. Fers, tūlit, ferret, lātus ērat, lātūrus. 5. Fīs, fiēmus, factī sunt, faciendus, fīmus. 6. Pōtest, pōtuērunt, pōtuisse, pōtērimus, pōtērat. 7. Prōfūtūrus, prōdērītis, prōdesset, prōdesto, prōfuīmus. 8. Ibunt, irētis, eāmus, īvisse, ytūrus. 9. Vult, māvult, nōlūmus, pōtēro, prōfuissēmus. 10. Lātī ērimus, fiātis, ī, iens, ēundō. 11. Fērēbāmīnī, prōdeste, nōlunt, mālet, lātus. 12. Fer, ībis, māvultis, lātū, tūlēro. 13. Vultis, fiēbāmus, vellētis, possent, factī essētis. 14. Māluīmus, pōtuērant, īvistī, vēlītis, possūmus. 15. Factī ērāmus, tūlērat, vōlent, prōdes, īvērant. 16. Pōtuit, ībātis, ferte, ēātis, fērendō.

II. *Translate into Latin :*

1. We have been able, he had benefited, he wishes, they will be unwilling, I had preferred. 2. He bears, of going, thou wilt become, may I bear, to have wished. 3. May we prefer, to be borne, to have been able, I shall benefit, go ye. 4. By bearing, we had wished, they would go, we are able, we shall have preferred. 5. They would become, to have gone, they will prefer, we could, be ye unwilling. 6. He will go, they were going, may you be able, they will have benefited, let him go. 7. Thou art borne, he has been made, we would wish, be thou made, we are borne. 8. They go, we shall go, you will wish, he has preferred, they would have been borne. 9. Having been borne, bearing, we go, they will have gone, to go. 10. You bear, thou art able, you have been borne, he had preferred, they shall be borne.

## SYNTAX.



## QUESTIONS.

40. **Ne**, **num**, and **nonne** are generally used in asking questions, especially if there is no other interrogative word in the sentence.

1. **Ne** simply asks for information; as, *Auditne, does he hear?* **Ne** is always appended to the word on which the question mainly turns.

2. **Num** expects the answer **no**; as, *Num audit, does he hear?* (**No.**)

3. **Nonne** expects the answer **yes**; as, *Nonne audit, does he not hear?* (**Yes.**)

**Note 1.**—The syllable before **ne** always has the accent.

**Note 2.**—The order of words in Latin is not fixed, as it is in English. Emphasis and euphony exert a larger influence in determining the order of words than any other considerations. In translating the following English exercises into Latin, the student may adopt a free imitation of the Latin exercises.

**Note 3.**—Words already given will not be found in the special vocabularies; but they will be found in the general vocabulary at the end of the book.

I. *Translate into English:*

1. *Estne leo in silvā?* 2. *Num est leo in silvā?* 3. *Nonne sunt leōnēs in silvīs?* 4. *Altumne est flūmen?* 5. *Nonne erat flūmen altum?* 6. *Num omnia flūmīna alta sunt?* 7. *Altane est nix in montibus?* 8. *Nonne lēgēs fuērunt utīlēs?* 9. *Num hī servī fortēs erunt?* 10. *Magnane sunt pēricūla bellī?* 11. *Num milītēs fuērunt in illā urbe?* 12. *Nonne mūrēs animālia sunt parva?*

II. *Translate into Latin:*

1. *Is the snow deep?* 2. *Was not the snow deep?* 3. *Is the river deep?* 4. *Is not the king rich?* 5. *Have these soldiers been brave?* 6. *Has not the consul been prudent?*

7. Are these laws useful? (No.) 8. Was not the name of Cicero great? 9. Is there a road through the forest? 10. Are not those mountains high? 11. Are all laws useful? (No.) 12. Have not these laws been more useful? 13. Have the Greeks taken the city?



## AGREEMENT.

### ADJECTIVES.

41. Adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case. (See 22.)

As, montēs altī, *high mountains*; magnae urbis, *of a great city*; huic sententiae, *to this opinion*; minōra sidēra, *the smaller stars*.

Note.—The comparative and superlative must sometimes be translated with *too* or *rather*, and *very*; as, fortior, *too or rather brave*; fortissimus, *very brave*.

### VOCABULARY.

lātus, a, um, broad, wide.

Gallia, ae, f., Gaul.

proelium, ī, n., a battle.

mālum, ī, n., an apple.

aurēus, a, um, golden.

vīvo, ēre, xī, etum, to live.

littēra, ae, f., a letter of the alphabet; pl. littērae, a letter, epistle.

Hesperīdes, um, f. pl., the Hesperides, daughters of Hesperus.

sōl, sōlis, m., the sun.

quam, conj., than.

doctus, a, um, learned.

multitūdo, īnis, f., a multitude.

mātūrus, a, um, ripe, mature.

clārus, a, um, bright, clear.

#### I. Translate into English:

1. Insūla est parva. 2. Oppīdum est magnum. 3. Sōl est māior quam terra. 4. Cīcēro ērat vir doctissīmus. 5. Brēviōrēs littērās ad tē scribo. 6. Ērat in Galliā lēgio ūna. 7. Multītūdo mīlītum fuit magna. 8. Mīles in multīs proeliīs fuit. 9. Nauta magnās urbēs vīdet. 10. Librī meī nōn sunt. 11. In hortō Hespēridum ērant

māla aurēa. 12. Errābat magnā in silvā. 13. In quā urbe vīvīmus?

## II. Translate into Latin :

1. The road is broad. 2. The river is wide. 3. The river is very wide. 4. The corn will be ripe. 5. The number of soldiers was great. 6. The stars were bright. 7. The nights are shorter. 8. The stars are very bright. 9. We have seen great cities. 10. We shall write a shorter letter. 11. This river is wider. 12. Caesar leaves two legions. 13. The river was very wide. 14. We live in\* this city.

## APPOSITION.

42. A noun added to another noun or pronoun to describe it, and denoting the same person or thing, agrees with it in case :

As, Cīcēro ōrātor interfectus est, *Cicero the orator was slain*; frāter Cīcēronis ōrātōris, *a brother of Cicero the orator*.

## VOCABULARY.

ūsus, ūs, *m.*, use, experience.  
lēgātus, ī, *m.*, a lieutenant.  
Lābiēnus, ī, *m.*, Labienus.  
Trōjānus, a, um, Trojan.  
pōēta, ae, *m.*, a poet.  
ōrātor, ōris, *m.*, an orator.

māgister, trī, *m.*, a master, teacher.  
Gēnēva, ae, *f.*, Geneva.  
Hōmērus, i, *m.*, Homer.  
scriptor, ōris, *m.*, a writer.  
victor, ōris, *m.*, a conqueror.  
lēgo, ěre, lēgī, lectum, to read.

## I. Translate into English :

1. Ūsus, māgister optīmus, nōs dōcet. 2. Nonne ūsus, māgister optīmus, hōmīnēs dōcet? 3. Caesar vēnit ad oppīdum Gēnēvam. 4. Lābiēnus lēgātus ad montem missus est. 5. Hōmērus, Trōjānī bellī scriptor, pōēta fuit. 6. Lēgīmus Hōmērum pōētā. 7. Lēgistīne Hōmērum pōētā?

---

\* See foot-note, page 49.

II. *Translate into Latin :*

1. Cicero the orator wrote many letters. 2. Experience, the best teacher, has taught men 3. They have read Homer, the writer of the Trojan war. 4. We shall send Labienus the lieutenant. 5. Labienus the lieutenant will be sent. 6. Caesar, the conqueror of Gaul, was consul. 7. Have you seen Caesar, the conqueror of Gaul?

PREDICATE NOUNS.

43. A predicate noun denoting the same person or thing as the subject agrees with it in case :

As, *Ancus rex creātus est, Ancus was made king; Antōnius hostis iudicātur, Antony is adjudged an enemy.*

**Note.**—Predicate nouns are used with verbs signifying to be, become, remain, be made, be called, be chosen, and the like.

VOCABULARY.

ultor, ōris, *m.*, an avenger.  
mors, mortis, *f.*, death.  
īnītiūm, ī, *n.*, a beginning.  
Rēmus, ī, *m.*, Remus.  
týrannus, ī, *m.*, a tyrant.  
sīne, *prep. with abl.*, without.  
Ariovistus, ī, *m.*, Ariovistus.

Miltiādēs, is, *m.*, Miltiades.  
error, ōris, *m.*, error, mistake.  
Rōmūlus, ī, *m.*, Romulus.  
nōmīno, āre, āvī, ātum, to name.  
appello, āre, āvī, ātum, to call.  
et, *conj.*, and.  
pātria, ae, *f.*, one's country.

I. *Translate into English :*

1. Ūsus est rērum māgister. 2. Cīcēro consul factus ērat. 3. Ultor vestrae mortis ēro. 4. Nonne ūsus māgister est optīmus? 5. Trōjānī bellī scriptor est Hōmērus. 6. Nōn omnis error est stultýtia. 7. Hoc Īnýtium\* fuit sālūtis. 8. Puērī Rōmūlus et Rēmus nōmīnantur. 9. Miltiādes týrannus fuērat † appellātus. 10. Errant sīne corpōre et ossībus umbrae.\*

\* Predicate.

† fuērat appellātus = appellātus fuērat = appellātus ērat.

II. *Translate into Latin :*

1. Caesar was commander. 2. Ariovistus was king of the Germans. 3. Experience is the best teacher. 4. Miltiades had been made commander. 5. Cicero was called the father of (his) country. 6. Had he not been called tyrant? 7. This (*neut.*) will be the beginning of liberty. 8. I shall be your companion. 9. This man will be the avenger of my death. 10. Romulus and Remus were brothers.

## RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

44. Pronouns agree with their antecedents in gender, number, and person ; but their case depends on the construction of the clause in which they stand :

As, *signum Jōvis, quod Phīdias fēcit, the statue of Jupiter, which Phidias made ; littērae quās dēdī, the letter which I sent ; Dēus, cūjus mūnēre vīvīmus, God, by whose gift we live.*

## VOCABULARY.

cor, cordis, *n.*, the heart.  
 cōpia, ae, *f.*, plenty, abundance.  
 cōpiae, ārum, *f.*, forces, troops.  
 Cyclādes, um, *f.*, the Cyclādes.  
 Belgae, ārum, *m.*, the Belgians.  
 incōlo, ěre, cōluī, cultum, to inhabit, dwell.

arma ōrum, *n. pl.*, arms.  
 sanguis, īnis, *m.*, blood.  
 prō, *prep. with abl.*, before.  
 Rhēnus, ī, *m.*, the Rhine.  
 trans, *prep. with acc.*, across.  
 dīvīdo, ěre, īsī, īsum, to divide.  
 sēcum = cum sē, with him, etc.

I. *Translate into English :*

1. Hespērides hortum hābuērunt, in quō ěrant māla aurēa. 2. Nūmērus eōrum, quī arma fērēbant, magnus fuit. 3. Nullum ānīmal, quod sanguīnem hābet, sīne corde esse pōtest. 4. Lēgiōnem Caesar, quam sēcum hābēbat, mīsīt ad Lābiēnum. 5. Cōpiās omnēs, quās prō oppīdō collōcāvērat, in oppīdum rēdūcit. 6. Germānī, quī trans Rhēnum incōlunt, bellum gērunt. 7. Miltiādes

insulās, quae Cyclādes nōminantur, custōdit. 8. Gallia est \* dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incōlunt Belgae.

**Note.**—In the following exercise, notice that each sentence consists of two parts, a principal clause and a relative clause; make the number and gender of the relative pronoun the same as those of its antecedent; but determine its case by its connection in its own clause.

## II. Translate into Latin :

1. The number of soldiers, who will bear arms, is small.
2. Miltiades settled the multitude, which he had led, in † fields.
3. The commander will send the forces, which he has with him, across the Rhine.
4. Caesar leads-back the legion, which he had stationed before the city.
5. Every animal, that has a heart, has blood.
6. The islands, which are named the Cyclades, are small.

## THE REFLEXIVES.

45. Suī and suus generally refer to a subject nominative in their own clause :

As, fūr sē dēfendit, *the thief defends himself*; Tullia pārentēs suōs amat, *Tullia loves her parents*; Caesar cōpiās suās dīvīsīt, *Caesar divided his forces*.

## VOCABULARY.

sententia, ae, f., opinion.

fīlius, ī, m., a son.

pārens, entis, m. and f., a parent.

dē, prep. with abl., of, from.

fīlia, ae, f., a daughter.

libērī, ōrum, m., children.

persēvēro, āre, āvī, ātum, to continue, persist.

dēdo, ōre, dēdīdī, dēdītum, to give up, surrender.

## I. Translate into English :

1. Milītēs sē dēfendunt.
2. Lēgiōnēs consūlem suum rēliquērunt.
3. Hostēs sē et arma sua dēdīdērunt.
4. Ille in suā sententiā persēvērat.
5. Impērātor cōpiās suās

\* est dīvīsa = dīvīsa est. See foot-note, page 57.

† See foot-note, page 49.

*divīdit.* 6. *Jūno flebat dōlōrēs suōs.* 7. *Mittent ālīquem dē suō nūmērō.* 8. *Cīvis sē dēfendit.* 9. *Cīvēs sē dēfendērunt.*

## II. *Translate into Latin :*

1. The soldier defends himself. 2. The soldiers defend themselves. 3. The enemy surrender themselves and their arms. 4. The citizens have fortified themselves. 5. The forces leave their commander. 6. The queen will not weep over her griefs. 7. The citizens have sent some-one of (*de*) their-own number. 8. The son loves his parents. 9. The daughter loves her parents. 10. Parents love their children.



## THE CASES.

### THE NOMINATIVE.

46. The personal pronouns as subject or nominative are generally not expressed, unless they are emphatic or contrasted. (See 28, 9.)

Special exercises on this case and the following are unnecessary.

### THE VOCATIVE.

47. The vocative with or without an interjection is used in addressing a person or thing :

As, *Tuum est, Servī, regnum, the kingdom is yours, Servius; Fortūnāte sēnex, fortunate old man !*

### THE ACCUSATIVE.

#### 1. Accusative of Direct Object.

48. The direct object of a transitive verb is put in the accusative. (See 33, V.):

As, *mittunt lēgātōs, they send ambassadors.*



## VOCABULARY.

quam, *adv.*, how.

hūmānus, a, um, human.

dux, dūcis, *com.*, leader, general.rēpente, *adv.*, suddenly.mānus, ūs, *f.*, the hand.

lāvo, āre, āvī, ātum, to wash.

ējicio, ēre, jēcī, jectum, to throw or drive out.

intrōdūco, ēre, xī, ctum, to lead in, introduce.

## I. Translate into English :

1. Ūnus lūpus nōn tīmet multās ōvēs. 2. Mūs bellum gērēbat cum rānā. 3. Quam rēpente tempus rēs mūtāt hūmānās. 4. Ēgo \* rēgēs ējēcī; vōs \* tŷrannōs intrōdūcītis. 5. Pāter nōs, duōs frātrēs, rēlīquit. 6. Caesar ēquītātum omnem mittit. 7. Consul in iīs lōcīs lēgiōnem collōcāvit.

## II. Translate into Latin :

1. A lion does not fear a thousand sheep. 2. You see a city without laws. 3. Have you seen the camp of the enemy? 4. The father had left three sons. 5. The mice were waging war with (*cum*) the frogs. 6. The general will send all his forces. 7. Hand washes hand.

## 2. Two Accusatives.

49. Verbs of teaching, cōlo, *I conceal*, and some verbs of asking and demanding govern two accusatives, one of the person and the other of the thing :

As, tē littērās dōceo, *I teach you letters*; ŷter omnēs cēlat, *he conceals his journey from all*.

Note 1.—Verbs meaning to call, name, make, choose, and some others may also take two accusatives, one of the object, the other of the predicate; as, urbem Rōmam vōcāvit, *he called the city Rome*.

Note 2.—The possessive pronoun must sometimes be supplied in translating; as, rōgāvit me sententiam, *he asked me my opinion*. In Latin the possessive is not used when it is perfectly clear whose the thing is..

## VOCABULARY.

posco, ŕre, pŕposeī, —, to beg.	Cāto, ōnis, <i>m.</i> , Cato.
Gallus, ī, <i>m.</i> , a Gaul.	ars, artis, <i>f.</i> , art, skill.
mūsīca, ae, <i>f.</i> , music.	multa, <i>neut. pl.</i> = many things.
Āthēniensis, is, <i>m.</i> , an Athenian.	consīlium, ī, <i>n.</i> , design, plan.
ēlēmētum, ī, <i>n.</i> , a first principle, element.	
creo, āre, āvī, ātum, to make, choose.	

I. *Translate into English:*

1. Māgister puērŕs ēlēmēta dŕcet. 2. Tē tua fāta dŕcēbo. 3. Nŕn tē cēlāvī sermŕnem. 4. Pācem tē poscīmus omnēs. 5. Caesar Gallŕs frūmentum flāgītāvit. 6. Cāto rŕgātus est sententiam.\* 7. Jūdīcem† pŕpŕlum Rŕmānum cēpērunt. 8. Rŕmŕlum rēgem pŕpŕlus creāvit. 9. Puērŕs Rŕmŕlum et Rēmum nŕmīnant. 10. Omnēs bellī artēs \* doctus ērat. 11. Pŕpŕlus Rŕmānus sēnātŕrēs patrēs appellat.

II. *Translate into Latin:*

1. Who taught your brother music? 2. Experience, the best teacher, has taught me many things. 3. A prudent general conceals his plans from the army. 4. The consul asked the senators (their) opinion. 5. The Romans called Cicero father of (his) country. 6. The people made Caesar consul. 7. They call the town Geneva. 8. The senator was asked (his) opinion. 9. The Romans will demand corn of the enemy. 10. The Athenians took Miltiades (as their) commander. 11. The consul asked me (my) opinion. 12. The Greeks called Miltiades tyrant.

## 3. Accusative of Time and Space.

50. The accusative is used to denote duration of time and extent of space:

\* In the passive, one accusative has become nominative. † as judge.

*As, dēcēm annōs urbs oppugnāta est, the city was besieged for ten years; fossa duōs pēdēs lāta, a ditch two feet wide.*

Question.—In the examples, what does *dēcēm annōs* denote? *duōs pēdēs*? *Lāta* is nominative, agreeing with *fossa*.

## VOCABULARY.

*Augustus, ī, m., Augustus.*

*hōra, ae, f., an hour.*

*paucī, ae, a, pl. adj., a few.*

*mōror, āri, ātus, dep., to delay.*

*Carthāgo, īnis, f., Carthage.*

*pāteo, ēre, uī, —, to be open.*

*oppugno, āre, āvī, ātum, to be-siege.*

*amplius, adv., more, longer.*

*dormio, īre, īvī, ītum, to sleep.*

*Āsia, ae, f., Asia.*

*Zāma, ae, f., Zama, in Africa.*

*mensis, is, m., a month.*

*jānuā, ae, f., a door.*

*absū, esse, fuī, —, to be absent or distant.*

### I. Translate into English:

1. *Augustus nōn amplius quam septem hōrās dormiēbat.* 2. *Caesar paucōs diēs in Āsiā mōrātus est.* 3. *Dōmī sēdet tōtōs diēs.* 4. *Flūmen est pēdēs quingentōs lātum.* 5. *Zāma quinque diērum īter ā Carthāgīne ābest.* 6. *Duōs mensēs oppīdum oppugnātum est.* 7. *Abfuī magnam partem mensis.* 8. *Flūmen est pēdēs quindēcim altum.* 9. *Noctēs et diēs pātet jānuā.*

### II. Translate into Latin:

1. *Caesar waged wars for many years.* 2. *We have slept more than eight hours.* 3. *The door has been open the whole day.* 4. *The city had been besieged for three months.* 5. *They have been absent a great part of the day.* 6. *Who sits at home whole days?* 7. *The road is eighty feet wide.* 8. *The mountain is a thousand feet high.* 9. *The river is ten feet deep.* 10. *The river is six hundred feet wide.* 11. *The town is distant a journey of nine days.*

### 4. Terminal Accusative.

51. The name of a town or small island, used as the limit of motion, is put in the accusative:

As, Attīcus rēmīgrāvit Rōmam, *Atticus returned to Rome*; Lātōna -  
confūgit Dēlum, *Latona fled to Delos*.

**Note.**—Dōmus and rūs, used as the limit of motion, are put in the  
accusative like names of towns :

As, īte dōmum, *go home*; rūs ībo, *I shall go to the country*.

## VOCABULARY.

Āthēnae, ārum, *f.*, Athens.

prōpēro, āre, āvī, ātum, to hasten.

sēro, *adv.*, late.

migro, āre, āvī, ātum, to remove.

Līlybaeum, ī, *n.*, Lilybaeum.

Pāris, īdis, *m.*, Paris, son of Priam.

nāvīgo, āre, āvī, ātum, to sail.

abdūco, ēre, xī, ctum, to lead away.

Mīlētus, ī, *f.*, Miletus.

Lemnus, ī, *f.*, Lemnus, *an island*.

rūs, rūris, *n.*, the country.

Delphī, ōrum, *m.*, Delphi.

argentum, ī, *n.*, silver.

Lācēdaemon, ōnis, *f.*, Lacedaemon.

Hēlēna, ae, *f.*, Helen, wife of Mene-

lāus.

### I. Translate into English :

1. Trēs lēgātī Āthēnās missī sunt. 2. Caesar Mīlētum  
prōpērāvit. 3. Miltiādes vēnērāt Lemnum. 4. Sēro dō-  
mum vēnistī. 5. Multī ex urbe rūs migrābant. 6. Quī-  
dam hōmīnēs Delphōs missī sunt. 7. Illud argentum  
Līlybaeum mīsīt. 8. Pāris Lācēdaemōnem nāvīgāvit et  
Hēlēnam Trōjam abduxit.

### II. Translate into Latin :

1. The Gauls sent ambassadors to Rome. 2. The army  
will be led-back to Athens. 3. The consul has sailed to  
Lilybaeum. 4. All that silver had been sent to Delphi.  
5. The soldiers hastened to Miletus. 6. The commander  
sailed to Lemnus. 7. Many will go to the country. 8.  
The boys have come home late. 9. Helen was led away  
to Troy. 10. The general had come to Lacedaemon.

### B. Accusative with Prepositions.

52. Twenty-eight prepositions govern the accusative; *ad*,  
*adversus* or *adversum*, *ante*, *apud*, *circā*, *circum*, etc. :

As, *per agrōs*, through the fields; *contrā hostēs*, against the enemy.

Note.—In and sub denoting motion or tendency, govern the accusative; denoting situation, they govern the ablative:

As, *ire in urbem*, to go into the city; *in urbe esse*, to be in the city. Learn the use of prepositions as they occur.



## THE DATIVE.

### 1. Dative with Adjectives.

53. Adjectives which in English take to or for after them are generally followed by the dative:

As, *cīvis ūtilis cīvitatī*, a citizen useful to the state; *rēs tibi facīlis*, mihi difficīlis, a thing easy for you, hard for me.

## VOCABULARY.

<i>grātus</i> , a, um, grateful, pleasing.	<i>īdōnēus</i> , a, um, suitable.
<i>proxīmus</i> , a, um, nearest, next.	<i>cārus</i> , a, um, dear.
<i>jūcundus</i> , a, um, delightful.	<i>āmīcus</i> , a, um, friendly.
<i>īnīmīcus</i> , a, um, unfriendly.	<i>Trōjānus</i> , ī, m., a Trojan.
<i>solum</i> , ī, n., soil, ground.	<i>sāpientia</i> , ae, f., wisdom.
<i>Antōnius</i> , ī, m., Antony.	<i>narro</i> , āre, āvī, ātum, to relate.
<i>prudentia</i> , ae, f., prudence.	<i>Mīnerva</i> , ae, f., Minerva.
<i>Helvētius</i> , ī, m., a Helvetian.	<i>Sāguntum</i> , ī, n., Saguntum.
<i>fīnis</i> , is, m., an end, limit; <i>plur. fīnēs</i> , boundaries, territory.	

### I. Translate into English:

1. *Ea lex vōbīs ūtilis est.* 2. *Vēr est ūtile silvīs.* 3. *Patriae solum omnībus cārum est.* 4. *Clāra nōbīs sunt tua consilia omnia.* 5. *Jūno et Mīnerva omnībus Trōjānīs Inīmīcae \* fuērunt.* 6. *Antōnius omnībus Cīcērōnis āmicīs Inīmīcus erat.* 7. *Gēnēva est oppīdum proxīmum Helvētiōrum fīnībus.* 8. *Fīunt omnia † castrīs quam urbī sīmīliōra.* 9. *Quid est hōmīnī mēlius quam sāpientia?*

\* Nom. plur. fem. to agree with Jūno and Mīnerva. † Nom. pl. neut.

II. *Translate into Latin :*

1. I shall be grateful to you. 2. The Belgians are nearest to the Germans. 3. This place was suitable for a camp. 4. My native country is dear to me. 5. I shall relate a thing delightful to you. 6. These laws are useful to the state. 7. What is better for man than prudence? 8. Liberty is pleasing to the multitude. 9. Your designs are clear to all men. 10. Saguntum was friendly to the Romans. 11. He is friendly to us all.

## 2. Dative of the Indirect Object.

54. Intransitive verbs signifying *to favor, please, serve, obey, threaten*, and others, take the dative of the indirect object only ; and transitive verbs take, together with the direct object, a dative of the person or thing *to which* or *for which* the act is done :

As, *Fortūna fāvet fortībus*, *Fortune favors the brave* ; *mundus deō pāret*, *the universe obeys God* ; *dēdī puērō librum*, *I gave (to) the boy a book*.

Note.—The dative may be used with a verb in the passive : as, *līber puērō dātus est*, *a book was given to the boy*.

## VOCABULARY.

*fāvēō, ēre, fāvī, fautum*, to favor.

*praeceptum, ī, n.*, a precept.

*arbor, ōris, f.*, a tree.

*persuādeo, ēre, āsī, āsum*, to persuade.

*firmus, a, um*, strong, firm.

*dō, dāre, dēdī, dātum*, to give.

*tristītia, ae, f.*, sadness.

*trādo, ēre, dīdī, dītum*, to deliver, hand over.

*obses, īdis, m. and f.*, a hostage.

*pāreo, ēre, uī, ītum*, to obey.

*servio, īre, īvī, ītum*, to serve.

*Castīcus, ī, m.*, Casticus.

*sāgitta, ae, f.*, an arrow.

*nōvus, a, um*, new.

*sacra, ōrum, n. pl.*, a sacrifice.

*mētus, ūs, m.*, fear.

*distribuo, ēre, uī, ūtum*, to distribute.

I. *Translate into English :*

1. *Ita istī fāveo sententiae.* 2. *Tībi fāvēmus.* 3. *Illī praeceptō pārebunt.* 4. *Omnis tibi serviet arbor.* 5. *Dux*

Castīcō persuādet. 6. Ēgo vōbīs regnum trādo firmum. 7. Lēgātus āvem, rānam, mūrem, quinque sāgittās Dārīō trādīdit. 8. Rōmūlus nōvae urbī nōmen dēdit. 9. Huīc dūcī trādīta urbs est. 10. Sacra Jōvī factūrus\* ērat. 11. Tristītiām et mētum trādam ventīs. 12. Obsīdēs Helvētiīs dātī sunt. 13. Ēquōs Germānīs distrībuēt.

II. Translate into Latin :

1. Ariovistus favored the Helvetians. 2. The consul favors the army. 3. They favor us. 4. We shall not persuade the soldiers. 5. All good citizens obey the laws. 6. The soldiers will obey (their) commander. 7. Shall we not serve (our) country? 8. Shall we favor the enemy? (No.) 9. The general will distribute horses to the soldiers. 10. The enemy surrender themselves and their arms to Caesar. 11. We shall favor that opinion (of yours). 12. Shall we not obey our parents? 13. Hostages had been given to the Romans. 14. The town was delivered to the consul. 15. All the forests serve us.

3. Dative of the Possessor.

55. A dative of the possessor is used with *esse* :

As, est mīhi liber (a book is to me) = *I have a book*; sunt nōbīs mītia māla = *we have mellow apples*; ērant rēgī trēs fīliae = *the king had three daughters*.

**Note.**—In translating, make the Latin dative the English nominative, and render the Latin verb by the proper tense of *have*; as in the examples.

VOCABULARY.

māter, tris, *f.*, mother.  
pōmum, ī, *n.*, fruit.  
Ārēthūsa, ae, *f.*, Arethusa.  
āvārītia, ae, *f.*, avarice.  
Nervius, ī, *m.*, a Nervian.  
certus, a, um, fixed, certain.

Andrōclus, ī, *m.*, Androclus.  
fons, fontis, *m.*, a fountain.  
morbus, ī, *m.*, disease.  
sīmīlītūdo, īnis, *f.*, likeness.  
mercātōr, ōris, *m.*, a trader.  
Lydus, ī, *m.*, a Lydian.

I. *Translate into English:*

1. Nōn est mīhi tempus. 2. Estne tībi māter? 3. Eī servō Andrōclūs nōmen fuit. 4. Sunt nōbīs mītia pōma. 5. Sunt vōbīs arma, est vōbīs dux fortis. 6. Fontī nōmen Ārēthūsa fuit. 7. Eī morbō nōmen est āvārītia. 8. Hōmīnī cum deō sīmīlītudo est. 9. Nullus ādītus ērat ad Nervīōs mercātōrībūs. 10. Hīs ērant eadem lēgēs. 11. Nullī est certa dōmus. 12. Fuērunt Lūdīs rēgēs.

II. *Translate into Latin:*

1. I have a friend. 2. Thou hast friends. 3. He has many friends. 4. We have two brothers. 5. The boy has a horse. 6. You have a good mother. 7. The soldiers have arms. 8. This consul had three sons. 9. The mother had two daughters. 10. We have useful books. 11. These boys have good books. 12. What will this brave soldier have? 13. That brave commander had three beautiful daughters. 14. What shall I have? 15. You have the same laws. 16. Cicero had very dear friends.

## 4. Dative with Compound Verbs.

56. Many verbs compounded with the prepositions *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *sub*, and *super*, take the dative:

As, *interfuit pugnae*, he was in the battle; *omnibus antestāre*, to surpass all; *postpōnere Hannibālem Ālexandrō*, to place Hannibal after Alexander.

**Note.**—Transitive verbs take an accusative also, as in the last example.

## VOCABULARY.

*Dumnōrix*, īgis, *m.*, Dumnorix.  
*tālentum*, ī, *n.*, a talent.  
*ultīmus*, a, um, the last.  
*Scytha*, ae, *m.*, a Scythian.

*Marcellus*, ī, *m.*, Marcellus.  
*Pompēius*, ī, *m.*, Pompey.  
*fēra*, ae, *f.*, a wild beast.  
*lābor*, ōris, *m.*, labor.

*ad-jungo*, ēre, xī, ctum, to join or add to.



in-fēro, ferre, intŭlī, illātum, to bring *or* wage on.  
 im-pōno, ēre, pōsuī, pōsītum, to put *or* place on, impose on.  
 inter-sum, esse, fuī, —, to be present at *or* in.  
 ob-sisto, ēre, stītī, stītum, to stand against, to oppose.  
 prae-sum, esse, fuī, —, to be in command of.  
 prae-sto, āre, stītī, stātum *or* stītum, to be superior; to excel.  
 sub-jicio, ēre, jēcī, jectum, to throw *or* put under.

I. *Translate into English:*

1. Cāto huīc lēgī obstīt. 2. Dumndrix ēquītātūī praeērat. 3. Marcellus sermōnī nostrō interfuit. 4. Pompeius trēs hostium exercītūs sibi adjunxit. 5. Cāto septem mīlia tālentōrum nāvibus impōsuit. 6. Impōsita est mānus ultīma bellō. 7. Dārīus Scythīs bellum intŭlit. 8. Praestāmus fēris. 9. Fēlix est, quī omnēs mētūs subjēcit pēdibus. 10. Caesar interfuit multīs proeliīs. 11. Hic lābor mīhi impōsītus est.

II. *Translate into Latin:*

1. I shall not oppose that law (of yours). 2. Labienus is-in-command-of the army. 3. The Gauls waged war on the Romans. 4. Pompey was present in that great battle. 5. The enemy had joined many slaves to themselves. 6. A lion is-superior-to a wolf. 7. The master imposed many labors on the slaves. 8. Many labors were imposed on the slave. 9. Who is able to put all fears under (his) feet?

B. Dative of the Agent.

57. The gerundive takes a dative of the agent:

As, multa vīdenda sunt orātōrī, *many things ought to be seen by the orator = the orator ought to see many things; hoc mīhi faciendum est, this is to be done by me = I have to do this, or I ought to do this.* (See 38, II.)

**Note 1.**—Passive verbs sometimes take a dative of the agent; as, hoc bellum mīhi susceptum est, *this war has been undertaken by me.*

**Note 2.**—In translating the dative with the gerundive, you will gen-

erally give the meaning more accurately by turning the Latin dative into an English nominative; as in the above examples.

## VOCABULARY.

**Sēquānus, ī, m.,** a Sequanian.

**et—et, both—and.**

**āgo, ěre, ěgī, actum,** to do, perform.

**ēdūco, ěre, xī, ctum,** to lead out.

**perfěro, ferre, tŭlī, lātum,** to suffer, endure.

**dēsīlio, īre, uī, sultum,** to leap down.

**servo, āre, āvī, ātum,** to keep, save.

**cōlo, ěre, uī, cultum,** to cultivate, practise.

**dīlīgentia, ae, f.,** diligence.

**crŭciātus, ūs, m.,** torture, torment.

**prōvincia, ae, f.,** a province.

**pugno, āre, āvī, ātum,** to fight.

I. *Translate into English:*

1. Ėpistōla est mīhi scrībenda.\* 2. Impĕrātor laudandus est et mīhi et tībi. 3. Haec vōbīs prōvincia est dēfendenda.\* 4. Caesārī est ēdūcendus exercītus. 5. Litterae tībi scrībendae \* sunt. 6. Pugnandum † est nōbīs cum hostībus. 7. Virtūs est omnībus cōlenda. 8. Caesārī omnia † ěrant āgenda.\* 9. Sēquānīs omnēs crŭciātūs ěrant perfĕrendī. 10. Mīlītībus et dē nāvībus dēsīliendum et cum hostībus ěrat pugnandum.

II. *Translate into Latin* (using the **passive periphrastic** form of the verb):

1. I must read this book (= this book is to be read by me). 2. You have to write a letter (= a letter is to be written by you). 3. The consul deserves to be praised by all. 4. Peace ought to be kept both by us and by you. 5. Diligence ought to be practised by all. 6. That province had to be defended by soldiers. 7. The commander will have to lead out the army (= the army will be to be led out, etc.). 8. The slave had to suffer tortures. 9. Homer

\* See 41, and 38, II.

† it is to be, etc. = we must, etc.

‡ all things = *everything*.

deserves to be read by us. 10. The lieutenant had to do everything. 11. You will have to weep (it will be to be wept, etc.).

### 6. Two Datives.

58. *Esse* and some other verbs take two datives, one of the person or thing concerned, the other of the end served :

As, *hoc est mīhi cūrae*, *this is (for) a care to me* ; *quinque cōhortēs castrīs praesīdiō rēlinquit*, *he leaves five cohorts as a guard for the camp* ; *hoc mīhi vītīō vertunt*, *they impute this to me as a fault*.

### VOCABULARY.

mālum, ī, *n.*, evil ; misfortune.

exītiū, ī, *n.*, destruction.

vītium, ī, *n.*, fault, vice.

Pausāniās, ae, *m.*, Pausanias.

dōnum, ī, *n.*, a gift.

auxīliū, ī, *n.*, aid, assistance.

praesīdium, ī, *n.*, a guard, protection.

dēdēcūs, ōris, *n.*, disgrace.

taedium, ī, *n.*, weariness.

Mūcius, ī, *m.*, Mucius.

ūtīlītās, ātis, *f.*, benefit.

adjūmentum, ī, *n.*, help.

impēdimenta, ōrum, *n.*, baggage.

verto, ōre, tī, *sum*, to turn, impute.

#### I. Translate into English :

1. Lūna magnō fuit Rōmānīs adjūmento. 2. Pausāniās vēnit Āthēniensībus auxīliō. 3. Estis et vōbīs hōnōrī et āmicīs utīlītātī. 4. Duae lēgiōnēs praesīdiō impēdimentīs ērant. 5. Patrēs \* Mūciō agrum dōnō dēdēre.† 6. Ūnam lēgiōnem castrīs praesīdiō rēlinquit. 7. Nullus Pompēiō lābor fuit taediō. 8. Mea vox sālūtī fuit multīs. 9. Hunc librum māgister mīhi praemiō dēdit.† 10. Virtūs nōn dātur dōnō. 11. Hoc tībi dōnō do. 12. Mālō est hōmīnībus āvārītia. 13. Dōmus dēdēcōrī dōmīnō fit. 14. Hoc tībi omnēs vertunt vītīō.

II. Translate into Latin (using the construction of the two datives) :

1. The general came to the aid of Pompey. 2. Good men

\* *i. e.* the Roman senators.

† from do.

are an honor to the state. 3. The moon was a great help to the enemy. 4. Let us be a benefit to (our) friends. 5. The master gave the boy a book as a reward. 6. The sea is a destruction to sailors. 7. No state was an aid to the Athenians. 8. Virtue is an honor to man. 9. That state had sent cavalry as an aid to Caesar. 10. They will impute this to the commander as a fault. 11. No labor will be a weariness to me. 12. This book is given as a gift. 13. The voice of the orator was the safety of the state (was for safety to the state).



## THE GENITIVE.

### 1. Adnominal Genitive.

**59.** A noun that limits the meaning of another noun, denoting a different thing, is put in the genitive.

The genitive dependent on a noun is called adnominal, and may denote

1. Possession; as, *Caesāris hortī*, *Caesar's gardens*.

2. The subject of action or feeling; it is then called subjective genitive: as, *āmor părentum*, *parents' love*, i. e. love felt by parents for their children.

3. The object of action or feeling; it is then called objective genitive: as, *āmor părentum*, *the love of parents*, i. e. love felt by children for their parents.

4. Material, or that of which anything consists; as, *grex porcōrum*, *a herd of swine*; *tălentum argentī*, *a talent of silver*.

## VOCABULARY.

*fauces*, ium, *f.*, the throat, jaws.

*fortūna*, ae, *f.*, fortune.

*haedus*, ī, *m.*, a kid.

*tectum*, ī, *n.*, a roof.

*lītus*, ōris, *n.*, a shore.

*fidūcia*, ae, *f.*, confidence.

*inhaereo*, ēre, sī, sum, to stick,  
cling to.

*sed, conj.*, but.

*Hector*, ōris, *m.*, Hector.

*sto, āre, stētī, stātum*, to stand.

*infīnītus*, a, um, boundless.

*tantus*, a, um, so great.

*forma*, ae, *f.*, form; beauty.

*trans-eo, īre, īvī, ītum*, to go over,  
cross.

I. *Translate into English :*

1. In cornū taurī sedēbat musca. 2. Āmīcī vōcem audio, sed vīdeo faucēs lūpī. 3. Magna multītūdo Germānōrum Rhēnum transībat. 4. Ērant māla aurea in hortō Hespērydum. 5. Ērat magnus mīlītum nūmērus. 6. In faucibus lūpī os inhaeserat. 7. Haedus stābat in tectō dōmūs. 8. Vir quīdam ambūlābat in litōre mārīs. 9. Tua fāta dōcet āliōrum fortūna. 10. Tanta est fidūcia formae.

II. *Translate into Latin :*

1. We love the soil of (our) country. 2. A little mouse touched the nose of a lion (a lion's nose). 3. This (man) had been the companion of the great Hector. 4. The multitude of stars is boundless. 5. The forces of the Romans were great. 6. Let us walk on the shore of the sea. 7. We were walking on the bank of the river. 8. Why do you fear the dangers of war?

## 2. Partitive Genitive.

60. Words denoting a part govern a genitive denoting the whole :

As, *pars mīlītum*, a part of the soldiers ; *fortissīmus mīlītum*, the bravest of the soldiers ; *quis vestrū*, which of you ? *sātis ēlōquentiae*, enough of eloquence.

Note.—The partitive word may be a noun, adjective, pronoun, or adverb, as in the above examples.

## VOCABULARY.

*exīguus*, a, um, small, little.  
*orno*, āre, āvī, ātum, to adorn.  
*concordia*, ae, f., harmony.  
*praestans*, antis, distinguished.  
*Cōnōn*, ōnis, m., Canon.  
*grando*, īnis, f., hail.

*jūvēnis*, is, m., a young man.  
*bōnum*, ī, n., good, advantage.  
*vīcus*, ī, m., a village.  
*Tarquīnius*, ī, m., Tarquinius.  
*sātis*, adv., enough.  
*auxīlia*, ōrum, n., auxiliaries.

*attribuo*, ēre, uī, ūtum, to assign, bestow.

*caedo*, ēre, cecīdī, caesum, to cut ; to slay.

*sūpersum*, esse, fuī, —, to remain, survive.

I. *Translate into English:*

1. Dārīus cum exīguā parte exercītūs ēvāsīt. 2. Princīpum ālīquis jūvēnem ornat. 3. Multum bōnī est in concordīā. 4. Centum et trīgintā mīlia hōmīnum sūperfuērunt. 5. Partem ējus vīcī mīlītīb<sup>1</sup> Caesar attrībuit. 6. Mīnus hābeo vīrium quam vōs. 7. Graecōrum ōrātōrum praestantissīmī Athēniensēs<sup>2</sup> fuērunt. 8. Duās ībi legiōnēs rēlīquit et partem auxiliōrum.

II. *Translate into Latin:*

1. That state sent a thousand (of) soldiers. 2. The last of the seven kings was Tarquinius. 3. The bravest of all these are the Belgians. 4. Conon came into (his) country with (*cum*) a part of the ships. 5. There<sup>3</sup> were seven thousand (of) talents in<sup>4</sup> the ships. 6. Jupiter has sent enough of snow and (of) hail. 7. Very-many of the Trojans are slain.

## 3. Genitive of Quality.

61. A noun and its adjective in the genitive are used to describe another noun:

As, jūvēnis mītis ingēniī, *a youth of mild disposition*; puer sēdēcim annōrum, *a boy of sixteen years*; vir summae virtūtis, *a man of the highest courage*. Here mītis ingēniī describes jūvēnis; summae virtūtis describes vir.

With this compare the ablative of quality.

## VOCABULARY.

mīrus, a, um, wonderful.

Sulla, ae, m., Sulla.

ānīmus, ī, m., mind.

Afrīca, ae, f., Africa.

dulcis, ē, sweet, fresh.

classis, is, f., a fleet.

libērālītās, ātis, f., liberality.

magnītūdo, īnis, f., greatness, size.

ingens, entis, vast, huge.

ādūlescens, tis, m., a young man.

fērus, a, um, wild, savage.

ēlōquentia, ae, f., eloquence.

fācīlītās, ātis, f., affability.

Tītus, ī, m., Titus.

sūbīgo, ěre, ēgī, actum, to bring under, subdue.

<sup>1</sup> See 54.

<sup>2</sup> Predicate.

<sup>3</sup> See Note, p. 48.

<sup>4</sup> Foot-note, p. 49.

I. *Translate into English :*

1. Graeci æquum mīrae magnīdūdīnis ex ligno fecerunt.  
 2. Sulla vir ingentis ānīmī fuit. 3. Pompēius, ādūlescens,<sup>1</sup>  
 quattuor et vīgintī annōrum, Afrīcam sūbēgit. 4. Nervī  
 ērant hōmīnēs fērī et magnae virtūtis. 5. Zāma quinque  
 diērum īter<sup>2</sup> a Carthāgīne ābest. 6. Tītus faciīlītātis  
 magnae fuit et libērālītātis.

II. *Translate into Latin :*

1. Cicero was a man of great eloquence. 2. The town  
 is-distant from (a) Zama a journey<sup>2</sup> of six days. 3. There  
 is a spring of fresh water, which (*cui*) has<sup>3</sup> the name Are-  
 thusa. 4. Caesar was a man of great mind. 5. The Athe-  
 nians gave (to) Miltiades<sup>4</sup> a fleet of seventy ships. 6. Titus  
 was a man of wonderful affability. 7. Have<sup>3</sup> you a spring  
 of fresh water? 8. Miltiades was a man of great affability.  
 9. Is he not a young man of twenty years? 10. We give  
 the commander<sup>4</sup> a fleet of fifty ships.

## 4. Genitive with Adjectives.

62. Adjectives are followed by a genitive denoting the  
 object to which the quality they express is directed :

As, *tēnax prōpōsītī*, tenacious of purpose; *mēmor virtūtis*, mindful  
 of virtue; *plēnus rīmārum*, full of chinks; *āvidus glōriæ*, eager for  
 glory; *bellī pērītus*, skilled in war; *ignāra mālī*, unacquainted with  
 misfortune.

**Note 1.**—Other words than of must frequently be used to translate  
 this genitive, as in the last three examples.

**Note 2.**—Adjectives governing the genitive are those denoting desire,  
 knowledge, care, memory, fulness, guilt, and their contraries; espe-  
 cially adjectives in *ax* formed from transitive verbs, and present parti-  
 ciples used adjectively; as, *cāpax imperī*, capable of command; *vērī-  
 tātis dīlīgēns*, fond of truth; *āmāntior dōmīnī*, fonder of his master.

<sup>1</sup> See 42.<sup>2</sup> See 50.<sup>3</sup> See 55.<sup>4</sup> See 54.

## VOCABULARY.

Atticus, ī, *m.*, Atticus.officium, ī, *n.*, a service; duty.

avidus, a, um, eager.

Themistocles, is, *m.*, Themistocles.

navalis, e, naval.

ignarus, a, um, ignorant.

plenus, a, um, full.

semper, *adv.*, always.

amans, antis, fond, loving.

conjunx, jūgis, *m. and f.*, husband; wife.

edax, āeis, devouring = a devourer.

ops, ōpis, *f.*, aid, power; ōpōs, means, resources.

memor, ōris, mindful.

laus, laudis, *f.*, praise.

liberalis, e, liberal.

peritus, a, um, skillful, skilled.

serva, ae, *f.*, a (*female*) slave.venator, ōris, *m.*, a hunter.

immemor, ōris, unmindful.

impatiens, entis, impatient.

cupidus, a, um, desirous.

## I. Translate into English:

1. Antōnius Attīci\* mēmōr fuit officiī. 2. Rōmānī laudis āvidī ērant. 3. Rōmānī pecūniae libērālēs ērant. 4. Thēmistōcles perītissīmōs bellī nāvālis fēcīt Āthēniēnsēs. 5. Carthāgo fuit dīves ōpum. 6. Illī† serva dātur, ōpērum nōn ignāra Mīnervae. 7. Tempus edax rērum est. 8. Gallia est plēna cīvium Rōmānōrum. 9. Omnia pācis plēna ērant. 10. Vēnātor est tēnērae conjūgis immēmōr.

## II. Translate into Latin:

1. Neither was mindful of his body. 2. The trees were full of birds. 3. You have always been eager for praise. 4. Caesar impatient of delay writes a letter. 5. Cicero was learned and fond of (his) country. 6. You are unmindful of me. 7. Sulla was desirous of pleasures, but more-desirous of glory. 8. The Romans were very-skillful in arms. 9. I shall always be mindful of this service. 10. Our state is rich in resources.

## B. Genitive as a Predicate.

63. The genitive in the predicate with *sum* or *fīo* denotes *property, quality, characteristic, part, or duty*:

\* See 59.

† See 54, Note.



As, omnia hostium ĕrant, *everything belonged to the enemy*; hoc est praeceptōris, *this is the business of the instructor*; est iūdīcis, *it is the part or duty of a judge*; prūdētiaē est, *it is the part (or a proof) of prudence*.

**Note.**—Observe the method of translating the above examples.

## VOCABULARY.

sōror, ōris, *f.*, a sister.

pēcus, ōris, *n.*, a flock.

nūmēro, āre, āvī, ātum, to count.

tīmīdus, a, um, timid.

sēnectūs, ūtis, *f.*, old age.

tondeo, ēre, tōtōndī, tonsum, to shear.

cūro, āre, āvī, ātum, to care for, take care of.

quīvis, quaevis, quodvis or quidvis, any; any one. Gen. cūjusvis, [etc.]

pastor, ōris, *m.*, a shepherd.

pauper, ĕris, *m.*, a poor man.

damnātio, ōnis, *f.*, condemnation.

opto, āre, āvī, ātum, to wish for.

ingēnium, ī, *n.*, talent, genius.

## I. Translate into English :

1. Mīlītis est impērātōrī \* pārēre. 2. Hī librī sōrōris meae sunt. 3. Bōnī pastōris est pēcus tondēre. 4. Pau-pēris est nūmērāre pēcus. 5. Flūmīnis ĕrat altītūdo pēdum trium. 6. Damnātio est iūdīcum. 7. Cūjusvis hōmīnis est errāre. 8. Āsia Rōmānōrum facta est. 9. Nonne hī librī frātris tuī sunt? 10. Terra est Dōmīnī.

## II. Translate into Latin :

1. It-is-the-duty of a shepherd to care-for (his) flock. 2. It-is-the-part of a timid (man) to wish-for death. 3. This house is the king's (is of the king). 4. These meadows belong to the queen. 5. It-is-the-duty of soldiers to follow (their) leader. 6. Prudence belongs to old-age. 7. It-is-a-mark of folly to persist in (*in*) error. 8. The man is learned and of great genius. 9. Do these gardens belong to the king? 10. They belong to the queen (= they are the queen's).

## 6. Genitive with Verbs.

64. Verbs of accusing, condemning, and acquitting take an accusative of the person and a genitive of the crime :

\* See 54.

As, *accūsāre āliquem furtī*, to accuse one of theft.

In the passive the accusative becomes nominative : as, *furtī damnātus est*, he was condemned of theft.

### VOCABULARY.

<i>accūso, āre, āvī, ātum</i> , to accuse.	<i>pāvōr, ōris, m.</i> , fear.
<i>damno, āre, āvī, ātum</i> , to condemn.	<i>Sōcrātes, is, m.</i> , Socrates.
<i>hērus, ī, m.</i> , a master of slaves.	<i>furtum, ī, n.</i> , theft.
<i>impiētās, ātis, f.</i> , impiety.	<i>crīmen, īnis, n.</i> , a charge, crime.
<i>ambītus, ūs, m.</i> , bribery.	<i>numquam, adv.</i> , never.
<i>prōdītio, ōnis, f.</i> , treason.	<i>īnertia, ae, f.</i> , inaction.
<i>condemno, āre, āvī, ātum</i> , to condemn.	
<i>absolvo, ōre, vī, sōlūtum</i> , to acquit.	
<i>insīmulō, āre, āvī, ātum</i> , to accuse (falsely).	

#### I. Translate into English :

1. Miltiādes *accūsātus est prōdītīōnis*. 2. Thēmistōcles *prōdītīōnis damnātus est*. 3. Exercītum quis *pāvōris insīmulāre* pōtest? 4. Eum *jūdex absolvit injuriārum*. 5. Hērum *insīmulābis āvārītiae*. 6. Mē ipsum *īnertiae condemnō*.

#### II. Translate into Latin :

1. The Athenians accused Socrates of impiety. 2. The generals are accused of treason. 3. The master (lord) deserves to be\*-condemned of theft. 4. He would never accuse another (*altērum*) of bribery. 5. The judges acquit you of the injuries. 6. The commander acquitted the soldier of the crime. 7. He has been condemned of treason. 8. Who accuses the consul of bribery?

#### 7. Genitive with Certain Verbs.

65. The following verbs govern the genitive :

<i>mēmīnī</i> , I remember.	<i>rēmīniscor, ī, —, dep.</i> , to remember.
<i>oblīviscor, ī, lītus, dep.</i> , to forget.	
<i>mīsēresco, ēre, —, —, to pity.</i>	<i>mīsēreor, ērī, ītus, dep.</i> , to pity.
<i>intērest, it concerns.</i>	<i>rēfert, it concerns.</i>

\* See 38, II.

As, *vīvōrum mēmīni*, *I remember the living*; *Epīcūrī nōn oblīvīsoor*, *I do not forget Epicurus*; *intērerat Clodīi*, *it concerned Clodius*; *mīśērere sōrōris*, *pity thy sister*.

1. Sum and verbs of valuing take a genitive of the degree of estimation :

As, *āger nunc plūris est quam tunc fuit*, *the field is of more value now than it was then*; *mīnōris aestīmāre*, *to esteem of less value*.

## THE ABLATIVE.

1. Ablative of Cause, Manner, and Means.

66. Cause, manner, means, or instrument is denoted by the ablative :

As, *suā victōriā glōriārī*, *to boast of their victory*, i. e. on account of their victory (ablative of cause); *latrōnum rītū vīvere*, *to live in (or after) the manner of robbers* (ablative of manner); *nāvēs ōnērānt aurō*, *they load the ships with gold* (ablative of means); *cornībus taurī sē tūtantur*, *bulls defend themselves with horns* (ablative of instrument).

## VOCABULARY.

*longus*, a, um, long.

*cēlērītās*, ātis, f., rapidity.

*Hercūles*, is, m., Hercules.

*nēco*, āre, āvī, ātum, to kill.

*glādius*, ī, m., a sword.

*Cātīlīna*, ae, m., Catiline.

*māgis*, adv., more, rather.

*Jānus*, ī, m., Janus.

*victōria*, ae, f., victory.

*moenia*, ium, n., (defensive) walls.

*conficio*, ěre, fecī, fectum, to perform, accomplish.

*subvēho*, ěre, vexī, vectum, to carry or bring up.

*prōfūgio*, ěre, fūgī, —, to flee, escape.

*creasco*, ěre, ēvī, ētum, to grow, increase.

*incrēdībīlis*, e, incredible.

*compleo*, ěre, ēvī, ētum, to fill.

*drāco*, ōnis, m., a serpent, dragon.

*finio*, īre, īvī, ītum, to end.

*vinco*, ěre, vīcī, victum, to conquer.

*claudio*, ěre, sī, sum, to close, inclose.

*glōrior*, ārī, ātus, dep., to boast.

*lignēus*, a, um, wooden.

### I. Translate into English :

1. Cāto vītam suam glādiō fīnīvit. 2. Caesar longisīmās viās incrēdībīlī cēlērītāte confecit. 3. Urbs formam

crescendō<sup>1</sup> mūtāt. 4. Hercūles duōs drācōnēs mǎnībus nēcāvit. 5. Multītūdīne hostium castra nostra complentur. 6. Frūmentum flūmīne<sup>1</sup> nāvībus<sup>2</sup> subvexērat. 7. Cātīlīna mētū consūlis<sup>3</sup> ad exercītum prōfūgit. 8. Rex victus est māgis consūliō Thēmistōclis quam armīs Graeciae. 9. Oppīdum clausērant moenībus. 10. Laudantur verbīs lēgiōnēs.

## II. Translate into Latin :

1. The city had been fortified with **the greatest** labor. 2. End (your) fear by the **death** of the tyrant. 3. The fields are clothed with **beautiful** flowers. 4. Augustus closed the doors of **Janus** with his-own hand. 5. The commander praised the soldiers for (= on account of) their courage. 6. We saw this (*neut.*) with (our) eyes. 7. Caesar subdued the Gauls by war. 8. The Helvetians boasted of (= by reason of) their victory. 9. The Athenians had fortified themselves with wooden walls. 10. Caesar had conquered Gaul by war.

## 2. Ablative with Comparatives.

67. The comparative degree is followed by the ablative, when *quam*, *than*, is omitted :

As, *lacrimā nīhil cītius ārescit*, *nothing dries more quickly than a tear* ; *quid mollius undā*, *what (is) softer than a wave ?*

**Note.**—*Māgis* or *mīnus* and the positive sometimes make a comparative ; as, *māgis sīmīlis*, *more like*.

## VOCABULARY.

*mīser*, *ēra*, *ērum*, wretched.  
*dūrus*, *a*, *um*, hard.  
*unda*, *ae*, *f.*, a wave ; water.  
*mīnus*, *adv.*, less.  
*lux*, *lūcis*, *f.*, light.

*plūs*, *adv.*, more.  
*saxum*, *ī*, *n.*, a rock.  
*mollis*, *e*, soft.  
*nēmo*, *īnis*, *m.* and *f.*, no one.  
*ēmax*, *ācis*, fond of buying.

<sup>1</sup> Means.

<sup>2</sup> Instrument.

<sup>3</sup> 59, 3.

mel, mellis, *n.*, honey.

crūdēlis, *e*, cruel.

aurum, *i*, *n.*, gold.

optābilis, *e*, desirable.

stultus, *a, um*, foolish.

Nestor, ōris, *m.*, Nestor.

fluo, ōre, *xī, xum*, to flow.

nīhil, *n. indeclin.*, nothing.

grāvis, *e*, heavy.

nōbīlis, *e*, noble.

quisquam, quaequam, quidquam, *or quicquam*, any, any one.

Gen. cūjusquam. Dat. cuiquam, etc.

I. Translate into English:

1. Quis mē vīvit mīserior? 2. Quid Jōve mājus hābēmus? 3. Fortūna plūs hūmānīs consīliīs pōtest.\* 4. Quid māgis est saxō dūrum, quid mollius undā? 5. Nēmo Attīcō mīnus fuit ēmax. 6. Lūce sunt clārīōra tua consīlia omnia. 7. Ex Nestōris linguā melle dulcior fluēbat ōrātio. 8. Nōn illō mēlior quisquam vir fuit.

II. Translate into Latin, both with and without quam:

1. Nothing was more cruel than that victory. 2. Gold is heavier than silver. 3. What is more desirable than wisdom? 4. The sun is larger than the earth. 5. The moon is smaller than the earth. 6. The soldiers are braver than the general. 7. The earth is smaller than the sun. 8. What is sweeter than honey? 9. The mind is nobler than the body. 10. Nothing is more foolish than we two.

3. Ablative of Time.

68. The ablative denotes time when and time within which:

As, hiēme, *in winter*; hōrā quartā, *at the fourth hour*; paucīs diēbus, *within a few days*; lūdīs, *at the games*; bellō, *in war*.

VOCABULARY.

aeger, gra, grum, sick.

hiēms, *is, f.*, winter.

Jūgurthīnus, *a, um*, Jugurthine.

occāsus, ūs, *m.*, a setting.

aestās, ātis, *f.*, summer.

aestus, ūs, *m.*, heat.

quaestor, ōris, *m.*, a quaestor.

prīmā lūce = at daybreak.

\* plus pōtest, *is more powerful*.

Plāto, ōnis, *m.*, Plato.

collis, is, *m.*, a hill.

cīvīlis, e, civil.

mōrior, mōrī, mortuus, *dep.*, to die.

mātūtīnus, a, um, morning (*adj.*).

tēgo, ěre, xi, ctum, to cover.

partēs, *plur.*, a party.

cādo, ěre, cēcīdī, cāsum, to fall.

### I. Translate into English :

1. Eō tempore Miltiādes aeger erat vulneribus.<sup>1</sup> 2. Eā hieme, quae<sup>2</sup> secūta est, Germānī flūmen Rhēnum transiērunt.<sup>3</sup> 3. Aestū magnō dūcēbat exercītum. 4. Sulla bellō Jūgurthīnō quaestor fuit. 5. Sōlis occāsū urbs capta est. 6. Plāto ūnō et octōgēsīmō annō scribens est mortuus. 7. Omnia ūnō tempore erant āgenda.<sup>4</sup> 8. Mātūtīnīs hōrīs hōmo tōtus est hōmo.

### II. Translate into Latin :

1. In summer the days are longer than in winter. 2. At sunset Ariovistus led-back his forces into camp. 3. In the tenth year Troy shall fall. 4. At daybreak the enemy moved (their) camp. 5. Within those few days he sent that silver to Lilybaeum.<sup>5</sup> 6. In spring the hills are clothed with flowers.<sup>1</sup> 7. In winter the mountains are covered with snow.<sup>1</sup> 8. On the arrival of Caesar horses were distributed to the Germans.<sup>6</sup> 9. In the civil war Cato followed the party of Pompey.

### 4. Ablative of Quality.

69. A noun and its adjective in the ablative are used to describe another noun :

As, vir mēdiocrī ingēniō, a man of moderate ability; maxīmō nātū fīlius, the son of greatest age; hōmo stātūrā hūmīlī, a man of low stature.

**Note.**—The ablative of quality is generally translated with *of*; sometimes *with*.

<sup>1</sup> 66.

<sup>4</sup> 38, II.

<sup>2</sup> 44.

<sup>5</sup> 51.

<sup>3</sup> Note, p. 98.

<sup>6</sup> 54.

VOCABULARY.

dignitās, ātis, *f.*, dignity.  
 vastus, a, um, enormous, vast.  
 excelsus, a, um, lofty, high, tall.  
 niger, gra, grum, dark, black.  
 divinus, a, um, divine.  
 atque, *conj.*, and.  
 ynūsītātus, a, um, unusual.

vīgīlantia, ae, *f.*, wakefulness.  
 rēgius, a, um, kingly, royal.  
 singulāris, e, remarkable.  
 stātūra, ae, *f.*, stature.  
 calvus, a, um, bald.  
 hīlāris, e, cheerful.  
 mīrīficus, a, um, wonderful.

auctōritas, ātis, *f.*, influence, authority.  
 transitus, ūs, *m.*, passage, crossing.  
 inter, *prep. with acc.*, between, among.

I. Translate into English :

1. Vir quīdam vastā<sup>1</sup> corpōris magnītūdīne impētum in Pompēium fēcīt. 2. Ērat Caesar excelsā stātūrā, nigrīs ōcūlīs, capīte calvō. 3. Jūvēnis dīvīnā spēcīe vīsus est. 4. Cātīlīna fuit magnā vī et<sup>2</sup> ānīmī et<sup>3</sup> corpōris. 5. Ērat inter Lābiēnum atque hostem diffīcīlī transītū flūmen. 6. Fuit mīrīfīcā vīgīlantiā Cānīnius.

II. Translate into Latin :

1. Miltiades was (a man) of<sup>3</sup> kingly dignity. 2. Caesar was (a man) of remarkable eloquence. 3. The Germans were of huge size of bodies. 4. The consul was of low stature. 5. We are all of cheerful mind. 6. There were in<sup>4</sup> that city many wild-beasts of unusual form. 7. This man was of wonderful wakefulness. 8. Have you not seen mountains of great height? 9. In<sup>4</sup> that place there is a mountain of great height. 10. This state was of great influence among the Belgians.

B. Ablative of Voluntary Agent.

70. The voluntary agent of a verb in the passive voice is put in the ablative with **a** or **ab** :

<sup>1</sup> Vastā magnītūdīne describes vir.

<sup>3</sup> Here indicates the ablative.

<sup>2</sup> Et—et, both—and.

<sup>4</sup> See foot-note, p. 49.

As, *Hector ab Achille caesus est, Hector was slain by Achilles.*

**Note 1.**—The voluntary agent is a living person, exercising will; the involuntary agent is an instrument or means, and does not require a preposition; as, *Hector tēlo caesus est, Hector was slain by a weapon.*

**Note 2.**—Use *ab* before words beginning with a vowel or *h*.

## VOCABULARY.

occūpo, āre, āvī, ātum, to occupy.

conjūrātio, ōnis, *f.*, a conspiracy.

jūgum, ī, *n.*, a yoke.

Eurystheus, ī, *m.*, Eurystheus.

rēvōco, āre, āvī, ātum, to recall.

Argōnautae, ārum, *m.*, the Argonauts.

Mysia, ae, *f.*, Mysia.

pīrāta, ae, *m.*, a pirate.

dētēgo, ēre, xī, otum, to detect.

Pēlops, ōpis, *m.*, Pelops.

fās, *indecl. n.*, right, lawful.

sub, *prep. with acc. and abl.*, under.

### I. Translate into English:

1. Pēlops a deīs in vītā rēvōcātus est. 2. Hercūles relictus est ab Argonautīs in Mysiā. 3. Fās est et<sup>1</sup> ab hoste dōcērī. 4. Ab Eurystheō duōdēcim lābōrēs Hercūli<sup>2</sup> impōsītī sunt. 5. Exercītus Rōmānus ab Helvētiīs sub jūgum missus est.

### II. Translate into Latin:

1. The mountain had been occupied by Labienus. 2. Caesar was taken by pirates. 3. The conspiracy of Catiline was detected by Cicero. 4. Ariovistus, king of the Germans, was conquered by Caesar. 5. Many towns were taken by the Romans. 6. The soldiers were praised by (their) commander. 7. That city had been fortified by the soldiers. 8. Our soldiers will not be conquered by the enemy. 9. The brave guards have been praised by all the citizens.

### 6. Ablative of Specification.

71. An ablative may be used with nouns, adjectives, or verbs to show in what respect their signification is taken:

As, *nōmīne grammāticus, rē barbārus, in name a grammarian, in*

<sup>1</sup> even.

<sup>2</sup> See 56.



*fact a barbarian; claudus altĕrō pĕde, lame in one foot; virtute praecēdunt, they excel in courage.*

VOCABULARY.

nātūra, ae, f., nature.	hōc, abl. neut., in this.
aevum, ī, n., age.	quod, conj., that; because.
mēmōria, ae, f., memory.	senēca, ae, m., Seneca.
claudus, a, um, lame.	vōluntās, ātis, f., inclination.
instītūtum, ī, n., usage, custom.	inter sē = from one another.
thēātrum, ī, n., a theatre.	strēnuus, a, um, vigorous.
nātū, abl., by birth, in age.	grandis, e, great, large.
sūpĕro, āre, āvī, ātum, to vanquish, conquer.	
collōquor, ī, cūtus, dep., to converse, confer.	
vāleo, ĕre, uī, ītum, to avail, be powerful, be well.	
diffĕro, ferre, distūlī, dīlātum, to differ.	

I. Translate into English :

1. Hī omnēs linguā, instītūtīs, lēgibus inter sē diffĕrunt.  
 2. Hīc rex et proeliō strēnuus ĕrat et bōnus consīliō. 3.  
 Quīdam in thēātrum grandis nātū vĕnit. 4. Ōrātor hōmī-  
 nem prūdētissīmum et perītissīmum dīcendī<sup>1</sup> arte sūpĕ-  
 rābit. 5. Hōc praestāmus fĕris,<sup>2</sup> quod collōquīmur inter  
 nōs.<sup>3</sup> 6. Spēcīe urbs libĕra est, nōn rē. 7. Ennius pōēta  
 ingēniō maxīmus est, nōn arte.

II. Translate into Latin :

1. There<sup>4</sup> was a town of the enemy, Saguntum by name. 2.  
 He is mature in mind and in age. 3. Seneca was-powerful  
 in memory. 4. The commander was lame in one<sup>5</sup> foot. 5.  
 They differ from (a) us in mind and in inclination. 6. They  
 differ in (their) natures; they are similar in (their) inclina-  
 tion. 7. That state was free in name, not in fact. 8. Homer  
 is very-great in genius and in art.

7. Ablative of Separation.

72. The ablative may denote that of which a person or  
 thing is deprived or from which it is separated :

<sup>1</sup> 62.

<sup>2</sup> 56.

<sup>3</sup> ourselves.

<sup>4</sup> Note, p. 48.

<sup>5</sup> altĕrō.

As, *spōliāre hōmīnem fortūnās*, to rob a man of his fortunes; *arcēre tȳrannum rēdītū*, to bar the tyrant from return; *abstīnere scēlere*, to keep from crime.

Note.—The ablative of separation often depends on a preposition; as, *prōhibere hostem ā pugnā*, to hinder the enemy from battle. In both the following exercises the ablative is to be used without a preposition.

### VOCABULARY.

*poena*, ae, f., punishment.

*lēvo*, āre, āvī, ātum, to relieve.

*mūrus*, ī, m., a (city) wall.

*nūdus*, a, um, stripped, bare.

*nūdo*, āre, āvī, ātum, to strip.

*solvo*, ēre, vī, sōlūtum, to loosen, release.

*pello*, ēre, pēpūlī, pulsum, to drive, banish.

*ērīpio*, ēre, uī, reptum, to snatch away, rescue.

*ēgrēdior*, ī, gressus, dep., to go forth.

*abstīneo*, ēre, uī, tentum, to abstain.

*prōhibeo*, ēre, uī, itum, to hinder, prevent.

*ōnus*, ōris, n., a burden.

*Āchilles*, is, m., Achilles.

*dēfensor*, ōris, m., a defender.

*fōlium*, ī, n., a leaf.

*spōlio*, āre, āvī, ātum, to rob.

#### I. Translate into English:

1. Hostēs lēvantur mētū. 2. Ītīnere exercītum nostrum prōhibent. 3. Trādīta urbs est nūda praesīdiō. 4. Caesar morae<sup>1</sup> impātiens castrīs ēgrēdītur. 5. Pulsus est corde dōlor tristī.<sup>2</sup> 6. Apollōnium omnī argentō spōliastī.<sup>3</sup> 7. Tarquīnius rex regnō pulsus est. 8. Nūdantur arbōrēs fōliis. 9. Pēpulum mētū libērāte.

#### II. Translate into Latin:

1. You will liberate me from great fear. 2. The slave was released from punishment. 3. Relieve me of this burden. 4. The victor Achilles robbed Hector of life. 5. The wall was stripped of defenders. 6. Caesar abstained from battle. 7. Rescue me from these evils. 8. Our soldiers will abstain from battle. 9. We shall relieve you of that burden (of yours). 10. The consul, impatient of delay, went forth from the camp.

<sup>1</sup> See 62.

<sup>2</sup> Agrees with corde.

<sup>3</sup> Note, p. 98.

## 8. Ablative of Degree of Difference.

73. The degree of difference between objects compared is expressed by the ablative:

As, *multō post*, after by much = long after; *ūnō dīgītō plūs*, more by one finger; *post paulō*, after by a little = a little after; *multīs annīs ante*, before by many years = many years before.

Note 1.—In expressions of comparison, *eō—quō*, *quanto—tantō* (by that—by which; by how much—by so much), are best rendered *the—the*; as, *eō grāvior dōlor quō culpa māior*, the pain (is) the heavier the greater the fault.

Note 2.—Words in italics are to be rendered by the ablative.

## VOCABULARY

*vīdeor*, *ērī*, *vīsus*, *dep.*, to seem.  
*caedes*, *is*, *f.*, slaughter.  
*ālacrītās*, *ātis*, *f.*, enthusiasm.  
*aedis*, *is*, *f.*, a temple.  
*spēcus*, *ūs*, *m.*, a cave.

*diūtius*, *adv.*, longer.  
*obscurus*, *a*, *um*, obscure.  
*vōveo*, *ēre*, *vōvī*, *vōtum*, to vow.  
*Pūnicus*, *a*, *um*, Punic.  
*nonnumquam*, *adv.*, sometimes.

*quantus*, *a*, *um*, how great, how much.  
*consīdēro*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, to consider.  
*injicio*, *ēre*, *jēcī*, *jectum*, to throw in, infuse.  
*quantō*, *tantō*, *quō*, *eō*, *ablat. sing. neut.*

### I. Translate into English:

1. *Quantō diūtius consīdēro*, *tantō rēs vīdētur obscurior*.
2. *Quō plūrēs ērant hostēs*, *eō māior caedes fuit*.
3. *Multō māior ālacrītās exercītū<sup>1</sup> injecta est*.
4. *Vōvērat aedem dēcem annīs ante Pūnicum bellum*.

### II. Translate into Latin:

1. Not much after (= not long after) a lion came to<sup>2</sup> the cave.
2. Sometimes they make the month one day longer.
3. (My) country is much dearer to me than<sup>3</sup> my life.
4. The sun is much larger than<sup>3</sup> the earth.
5. The tower was ten feet higher than<sup>3</sup> the wall.

<sup>1</sup> See 56.

<sup>2</sup> ad.

<sup>3</sup> 67.

## 9. Ablative of Source.

74. Perfect participles denoting origin are followed by an ablative of the source :

As, *Mercurius Jove et Maiā nātus erat*, Mercury had been born of Jupiter and Maia.

## VOCABULARY.

voco, āre, āvī, ātum, to call.

Ancus, ī, m., Ancus.

Aenēas, ae, m., Aeneas.

Āpollo, īnis, m., Apollo.

gēnus, ōris, n., race, lineage.

gigno, ěre, gēnui, gēnītum, to beget; to bear.

ōrior, īrī, ortus, dep., to rise, spring.

Nūma, ae, m., Numa.

Alcmēna, ae, f., Alcmena.

dēa, ae, f., a goddess.

Lātōna, ae, f., Latona.

nascor, ī, nātus, to be born.

## I. Translate into English :

1. Illa sōrōrēs nocte vocat gēnītās. 2. Nūmae rēgis<sup>1</sup> nēpōs, fīliā ortus, Ancus erat. 3. Hercūlēs Jove nātus est et Alcmēnā. 4. Aenēas,<sup>2</sup> dīs gēnīte et gēnītūre deōs.

## II. Translate into Latin :

1. Aenēas was born of a goddess. 2. Apollo was born of Jupiter and Latona. 3. Catiline was born of noble lineage.

## 10. Ablative of Price.

75. The price or value is put in the ablative :

As, *hunc librum parvō prētiō ēmī*, I bought this book at a small price.

## VOCABULARY.

charta, ae, f., paper.

corvus, ī, m., a raven.

ēmo, ěre, ēmī, emptum, to buy.

as, assis, m., a copper.

scēlus, ōris, n., a crime.

vendo, ěre, dīdī, dītum, to sell.

atrāmentum, ī, n., ink.

nummus, ī, m., a sesterce.

ōpus, indecl. adj., necessary.

arx, arcis, f., a citadel.

Isocrātes, is, m., Isocrates.

mīlia, ium, n., thousands.

<sup>1</sup> See 42.

<sup>2</sup> Vocative.

I. *Translate into English:*

1. Augustus corvum vīgintī mīllībus<sup>1</sup> nummōrum<sup>2</sup> ēmit.
2. Quod<sup>3</sup> nōn ōpus est, asse cārū est. 3. Arcem scēlōre emptam hostēs hābent. 4. Regnum vendīdit pēcūniā.

II. *Translate into Latin:*

1. Isocrates sold one oration for twenty talents. 2. This (man) sold (his) country for gold. 3. I have bought paper and ink for six sesterces. 4. I sold the house for four talents. 5. That ink (of yours) is dear at a copper. 6. Would you buy a raven at three thousand (of) sesterces?

11. Ablative Absolute.

76. A noun and a participle not connected with the main construction of the sentence may stand by themselves in the ablative, called **ablative absolute**:

As, *impērante Augustō*, *Augustus commanding* = while Augustus commanded; *sēdente rēge*, *the king sitting* = while the king sat or sits.

**Note 1.**—The ablative absolute is used to express *cause, time, means, condition, concession*, etc.

**Note 2.**—English idiom often requires the ablative absolute to be translated, not literally, but so as to express the time, the cause, the means, etc. Thus: *Rōmānī, ponte factō*, etc., *the Romans having made a bridge*, etc. (literally, *a bridge having been made*). *Cognītō Caesaris adventū*, etc., *when the arrival of Caesar was known*, etc. (literally, *the arrival of Caesar having been known*). *Ascāniū, Lāviniō rēlictō*, etc., *Ascanius having left Lavinium*, etc.

1. As *sum* has no present participle, two nouns or a noun and an adjective may stand together in the ablative absolute:

As, *Cāmillō dūce* = *with Camillus as general*; literally, *Camillus (being) general*; *vīvō patre* = *while father is alive*; literally, *father (being) alive*.

**Note 3.**—In the following exercises, the words in italics are to be rendered by the ablative absolute.

<sup>1</sup> Abl. of price.

<sup>2</sup> See 60.

<sup>3</sup> = *what*.

## VOCABULARY.

rēfūgio, ěre, ūgī, to flee back.  
 tempestās, ātis, *f.*, a storm.  
 Lāvīnium, ī, *n.*, Lavinium.  
 dīco, ěre, xī, etum, to speak, say.  
 sospes, ģtis, safe.  
 pirātīcus, a, um, piratic.  
 Messāla, ae, *m.*, Messala.  
 vādum, ī, *n.*, a ford.  
 pugna, ae, *f.*, a battle.

responsum, ī, *n.*, an answer.  
 condo, ěre, dīdī, dītum, to found.  
 dīruo, ěre, ūī, ūtum, to destroy.  
 contrā, *prep.* with *acc.*, against.  
 Pīso, ōnis, *m.*, Piso.  
 fundo, ěre, ūdī, ūsum, to shed.  
 rēpōrio, ģre, pērī, pertum, to find.  
 sōlium, ī, *n.*, a throne.  
 āmitto, ěre, īsī, issum, to lose.

prōcēdo, ěre, essī, essum, to advance.  
 discēdo, ěre, essī, essum, to withdraw.  
 transdūco, ěre, xī, etum, to lead across.  
 cognosco, ěre, ōvī, ģtum, to learn, know.  
 prōfīciscor, ī, fectus, *dep.*, to set out, proceed.

I. *Translate into English :*

1. Trōjā dīrūtā, Aenēas nāvībus<sup>1</sup> prōfūgit. 2. Confectō bellō pirātīcō, Pompēius contrā rēgem prōfectus est. 3. Caesar, multīs urbībus occūpātīs, Mīlētum<sup>2</sup> prōfectus est. 4. Hāc pugnā pugnātā, Rōmam<sup>2</sup> prōfectus est. 5. Hic vir audax, Messālā et Pīsōne consūlībus, conjūrātiōnem fēcīt. 6. Ģbi vādīs rēpertīs, partem suārum cōpiārum<sup>3</sup> transdūcunt. 7. Paucīs<sup>4</sup> dēfendentībus, oppīdum cāpēre nōn pōtuit. 8. Impērātor, audītā fīliī morte, Rōmam<sup>1</sup> prōfectus est. 9. Multa bella, Caesāre impērātōre, in Galliā gesta sunt. 10. Nātus est Augustus, Cīcērōne et Antōniō consūlībus. 11. Caesar, urbe captā, discessit.

II. *Translate into Latin :*

1. The soldiers advance one-by-one, *while the king sits on a throne.* 2. The tyrants fled-back into the city *with the loss of (their) arms and baggage.* 3. *As a storm arose,* Hercules was left in<sup>5</sup> Mysia by<sup>6</sup> the Argonauts. 4. The ambassador,

<sup>1</sup> 66.<sup>2</sup> 51.<sup>3</sup> 60.<sup>4</sup> = *though few.*<sup>5</sup> See foot-note, p. 49.<sup>6</sup> 70.

having given this answer, withdrew. 5. When the arrival of Caesar was known, Ariovistus sent ambassadors to (*ad*) him. 6. Ascanius having left Lavinium founded a new city. 7. When Caesar saw the head of Pompey, he shed tears. 8. When Caesar heard-of the death of Cato, he spoke thus. 9. Troy will not all<sup>1</sup> fall while thou art safe. 10. When the commander had conquered the enemy, he proceeded to Rome.<sup>2</sup>

### 12. Ablative with Prepositions.

77. Twelve prepositions govern the ablative; *ā, ab, or abs, cum, dē, ē or ex, prae, prō, sine*, etc.

Learn the use of these prepositions as they occur.

### 13. Ablative with Certain Verbs.

78. *Ūtor, ābūtor, fruor, fungor, pōtior*, and *vescor* take the ablative:

As, *libertāte ūtī*, to enjoy liberty; *castrīs pōtītī sunt*, they took possession of the camp; *cāsēō vescor*, I feed on cheese.

**Note.**—These are ablatives of means, instrument, or source.

### 14. Ablative with Ōpus and Ūsus.

79. *Ōpus* and *ūsus*, signifying need, govern the ablative:

As, *dūce nōbīs ōpus est* — we have need of a leader (*nōbīs* is dat. of the possessor (see 55); *nunc vīribus ūsus est*, now there is need of strength.

Translate into Latin (with *ūsus* in No. 6 only):

1. We<sup>3</sup> need authority. 2. You<sup>3</sup> need a leader. 3. I<sup>3</sup> have need of you. 4. You<sup>3</sup> have no (*nōn*) need of Apollo. 5. We<sup>3</sup> need books. 6. There<sup>4</sup> is need of money.

### 15. Ablative with Dignus and Indignus.

80. *Dignus*, worthy, and *indignus*, unworthy, govern the ablative:

<sup>1</sup> tota.

<sup>2</sup> 51.

<sup>3</sup> 55.

<sup>4</sup> Note, p. 48.

As, *Imitātiōne dignus*, *worthy of imitation*; *lūce indignus*, *unworthy of the light*.

*Translate into Latin :*

1. Many are unworthy of the light. 2. The boy is worthy of blame. 3. The slave is worthy of (his) master (= lord). 4. He is a man most-worthy of his father and grandfather. 5. Thou art most-unworthy of this honor. 6. What is more-worthy of man than<sup>1</sup> wisdom? 7. Virtue is worthy of imitation.

For the Ablative of Place, see 82, 1 and 2.



## PLACE.

### WHERE, WHENCE, AND WHITHER.

81. The place **where**, **whence**, and **whither** regularly requires a preposition :

1. The place **where** regularly requires **in** with the **ablative** :

As, *in portū nāvīgo*, *I am sailing in the harbor*.

2. The place **whence** regularly requires **ab**, **dē** or **ex** :

As, *ab urbe prōfīciscī*, *to set out from the city*.

3. The place **whither** regularly requires **ad** or **in** with the **accusative** :

As, *ad templum ibant*, *they were going to the temple*; *via dūcit in urbem*, *the way leads into the city*.

To these rules there are the following **regular exceptions** :

82. When the place **where**, **whence**, or **whither** is the **name of a town or small island**.

1. The place **where** is in the **ablative** **without** a preposition; unless such name is of the first or second declension, singular, when place **where** is in the **genitive** :

---

<sup>1</sup> See 67.



As, *vixī Carthāgīne, Rōmae, Brundīsiī, Āthēnīs*, *I have lived at Carthage, Rome, Brundisium, Athens.*

2. The place whence is in the ablative without a preposition :

As, *fūgiunt Carthāgīne, Rōmā, Brundīsiō, Āthēnīs*, *they flee from Carthage, Rome, Brundisium, Athens.*

3. The place whither is in the accusative without a preposition :

As, *fūgiunt Carthāgīnem, Rōmam, Brundīsium, Āthēnās*, *they flee to Carthage, Rome, Brundisium, Athens.* (See 51.)

4. *Dōmī*, *at home*; *bellī*, *at war*; *mīlītiæ*, *on military service*; and *hūmī*, *on the ground*, are used like names of towns to denote place where.

5. *Dōmō*, *from home*; *hūmō*, *from the ground*; and *rūre*, *from the country*, are used like names of towns to denote place whence.

6. The road by which is in the ablative (of means) without a preposition :

As, *Aurēliā viā prōfectus est*, *he set out by the Aurelian way*; *ingredī portā Esquīlinā*, *to enter by the Esquiline gate.*

## VOCABULARY.

*Sparta*, ae, f., *Sparta*.

*philōsōphia*, ae, f., *philosophy*.

*Itālia*, ae, f., *Italy*.

*castellum*, ī, n., *a fort, fortress*.

*Cyprus*, ī, f., *Cyprus, an island*.

*regno*, āre, āvī, ātum, *to reign*.

*Ōrestes*, is, m., *Orestes*.

*jaceo*, ēre, uī, ītum, *to lie*.

*Crōtōn*, ōnis, m. and f., *Croton, in Italy*.

*Tarquīniī*, ōrum, m., *Tarquinii, in Italy*.

*conféro*, ferre, tūlī, collātum, *to bring together, collect*.

*sēnātus*, ūs, m., *a senate*.

*Rhōdos*, ī, f., *Rhodes, an island*.

*impērium*, ī, n., *command, power*.

*Cōrinthus*, ī, f., *Corinth, in Greece*.

*Arpīnum*, ī, n., *Arpinum, in Italy*.

*Scīpio*, ōnis, m., *Scipio*.

*Argī*, ōrum, m., *Argos, in Greece*.

*fūgio*, ēre, ūgī, ūgītum, *to flee*.

I. *Translate into English* :

1. *Tyrannī in urbem rēfūgērunt*. 2. *Est cōpia frūmentī*

in agrīs. 3. Cātīlīna in sēnātum vēnit. 4. Cātīlīna mētū<sup>1</sup> consūlis Rōmā ad exercītum prōfūgit. 5. Brūtus Āthēnīs phīlōsōphiam, ēlōquentiam Rhōdī dīdīcit. 6. Eō tempore<sup>2</sup> multī princīpēs cīvītātis Rōmā prōfūgērunt. 7. Māgister Crōtōne vixit. 8. Dōmō vēnio. 9. Nīhil dōmī, nīhil mīlītiae est gestum. 10. Nōbīlissīmī Rōmānōrum<sup>3</sup> rūre ad exercītuum impēria prōfectī sunt. 11. Rōmūlus Romae regnāvit. 12. Lēgātī vēnērunt Carthāgīne, Āthēnīs, Cōrīnthō, Trōjā.

## II. *Translate into Latin:*

1. Conon came into (his) country. 2. Caesar stationed a legion in those places. 3. Have you not been in the gardens of Scipio? 4. The soldiers were in the fort. 5. The commander proceeded into Italy. 6. The Helvetians collected their baggage into one place. 7. Cicero was born at Arpinum. 8. Orestes reigned at Argos and Sparta. 9. He taught boys at Corinth. 10. The king fled from Corinth to Tarquinii. 11. In the spring<sup>2</sup> we shall withdraw from Carthage. 12. The ambassadors proceeded from Tarquinii to Athens. 13. The orator learned eloquence at Rhodes and Athens. 14. The soldiers lie on the ground in summer.<sup>3</sup> 15. Conon lived at Cyprus.



## THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

### 1. SUBJECT OF THE INFINITIVE.

83. The subject of the infinitive mood is put in the **accusative** :

As, *audīmus rēgem vēnīre*, we hear that the king is coming. Here *rēgem* is the subject accusative of *vēnīre*.

## 2. INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE.

84. The infinitive with a subject accusative is used with verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving*, and the like :

As, *dīcit Rōmānōs vincēre*, he says that the Romans conquer ; *pūtās mē scrībēre*, you think that I am writing ; *dīcunt sē mīlītēs esse*, they say that they are soldiers ; *Caesar mīlītēs sēquī jussit*, Caesar ordered the soldiers to follow. Here *Rōmānōs* is the subject accusative of *vincēre* ; *mē* is subject accusative of *scrībēre* ; etc.

## Method of Translating.

1. By examining the above translations, you will see that the subject accusative *Rōmānōs* is translated as if it were a nominative preceded by the word *that* ; *mē* is translated *that I* ; *ēpistōlam*, *that the letter* ; etc.

2. You will also see that the infinitive verb is translated as if it were a finite verb, generally in the indicative.

3. Sometimes the subject accusative may be translated without *that*, as in the last example.

**Note.**—The infinitive without a subject accusative is used with verbs signifying *will, power, duty, custom*, etc. (as in English) : as, *possum hanc rem facēre*, I can do this thing ; *mātūrat prōfīciēcī*, he hastens to set out.

## VOCABULARY.

*mundus*, ī, *m.*, world, universe.

*pūto*, āre, āvī, ātum, to think.

*justus*, a, um, just.

*nēgo*, āre, āvī, ātum, to deny.

*fortīter*, adv., bravely.

*Rullus*, ī, *m.*, Rullus.

*scio*, īre, īvī, ītum, to know.

*gēmīnī*, ōrum, *m.*, twins.

## I. Translate into English :

1. *Dīcimus deum rēgēre mundum.* 2. *Scīmus terram mājōrem esse lūnā.*<sup>1</sup> 3. *Pūto frātre tuum vēnīre.* 4. *Nonne pūtās mundum ā deō<sup>2</sup> rēgī?* 5. *Sōror dīcit sē<sup>3</sup> ēpistōlam scrībēre.* 6. *Audīmus Rullum hōmīnem<sup>4</sup> esse justum.* 7. *Quis nēgat puērōs esse gēmīnōs?*<sup>4</sup> 8. *Nē-*

<sup>1</sup> 67.

<sup>2</sup> 70.

<sup>3</sup> 45.

<sup>4</sup> 43.

gāsne nōs pācem servāre? 9. Pŭtāmus vōs pācem servāre? 10. Dīcit mīlītēs pugnāre fortīter.

## II. Translate into Latin :

1. The Romans say that Jupiter is a god.<sup>1</sup> 2. Do you not think that your sister is coming? 3. They deny that Rullus is a good man.<sup>1</sup> 4. We know that the sun is larger than the earth.<sup>2</sup> 5. My brother says that he<sup>3</sup> is writing a letter. 6. Who knows that the boys are twins?<sup>1</sup> 7. They say that the Romans are besieging the town. 8. We think that we are keeping the peace. 9. I think that mother is coming. 10. Do you not think that the multitude of stars is boundless?

## 3. TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.

85. The tenses of the infinitive denote time as present, past, or future, relatively to the time of the principal verb: Thus :

Dīco tē scrībēre, *I say that you are writing ;*

Dīco tē scripsisse, *I say that you wrote or have written ;*

Dīco tē scriptūrum esse, *I say that you will write ;*

Dīcēbam tē scrībēre, *I was saying that you were writing ;*

Dixēram tē scriptūrum esse, *I had said that you would write ;*

Dixēram tē scripsisse, *I had said that you had written ; etc.*

In the fourth example, the act of writing and the act of saying occur at the same time; hence the present infinitive must be used. In the fifth example, the act of writing is future to the act of saying; hence the future infinitive must be used. In the last example, the act of writing precedes the act of saying; hence the perfect infinitive must be used.

**Note.**—In the compound tenses of the infinitive the participle must agree in gender and number with the subject; as, spēro sōrōrem scriptūram esse, *I hope that sister will write*; dīcunt Rōmānōs oppīdum oppugnātūrōs esse, *they say that the Romans will besiege the town.*

<sup>1</sup> 43.

<sup>2</sup> 67.

<sup>3</sup> 45.

## Exercise on the Tenses.

I. *Translate into English :*

1. Dīco tē scrībēre. 2. Dīcam tē scrībēre. 3. Dixēro tē scrībēre. 4. Dixī tē scrībēre. 5. Dīco tē scripsisse. 6. Dīcam tē scripsisse. 7. Dixēro tē scripsisse. 8. Dixī tē scripsissē. 9. Dīco tē scriptūrum esse. 10. Dīcam tē scriptūrum esse. 11. Dixī tē scriptūrum esse. 12. Dixēro tē scriptūrum esse. 13. Dīcēbam tē scrībēre. 14. Dixēram tē scrībēre. 15. Dīcēbam tē scripsisse. 16. Dixēram tē scripsisse. 17. Dīcēbam tē scriptūrum esse. 18. Dixēram tē scriptūrum esse. 19. Dīco ēpistōlam scrībī. 20. Dīco ēpistōlam scriptam esse. 21. Dīco ēpistōlam scriptum īrī. 22. Dixēram ēpistōlam scrībī. 23. Dixēram ēpistōlam scriptam esse. 24. Dixēram ēpistōlam scriptum īrī. 25. Dīcēbam ēpistōlam scrībī. 26. Dīcēbam ēpistōlam scriptam fuisse. 27. Dīcēbam ēpistōlam scriptum īrī. 28. Dixī epistōlam scrībī. 29. Dixī ēpistōlam scriptam esse. 30. Dixī ēpistōlam scriptum īrī.

Viōlo, āre, āvī, ātum, to violate.

II. *Translate into Latin :*

1. He denies that he<sup>1</sup> is violating the laws. 2. He denies that he will violate<sup>2</sup> the laws. 3. He denies that he has violated the laws. 4. He will deny that he is violating the laws. 5. He will deny that he has violated the laws. 6. He will deny that he will violate<sup>2</sup> the laws. 7. He has denied that he will violate the laws. 8. He has denied that he is violating the laws. 9. He has denied that he has violated the laws. 10. He had denied that he had violated the laws. 11. He had denied that he would violate the laws. 12. He had denied that he was (*then*) violating the laws. 13. He denies that the laws are being violated. 14.

<sup>1</sup> 45.

<sup>2</sup> 85, Note.

He denied that the laws had been violated.<sup>1</sup> 15. He had denied that the laws would be violated. 16. He will have denied that the laws are being violated. 17. He will have denied that the laws have been violated.<sup>1</sup> 18. He will have denied that the laws will be violated.

<sup>1</sup> See 85, Note.

### General Exercises.

### VOCABULARY.

sīmūlo, āre, āvī, ātum, to pretend.

mēmōro, āre, āvī, ātum, to recount.

Hannībal, ālis, *m.*, Hannibal.

jūbeo, ēre, ussī, ussum, to order.

māneo, ēre, sī, sum, to remain.

sāpiens, entis, wise.

Nūmītor, ōris, *m.*, Numitor.

fūro, ēre, —, —, to be mad.

āpud, *prep.* with *acc.*, among.

Jūgurtha, ae, *m.*, Jugurtha.

discrīmen, īnis, *n.*, danger, peril.

invidēo, ēre, vīdī, vīsum, to envy.

dēhortor, ārī, ātus, *dep.*, to dissuade.

admōnēo, ēre, uī, ītum, to admonish.

decerno, ēre, crēvī, crētum, to decree.

fāma, ae, *f.*, a report, saying; fāma est, there is a report.

#### I. Translate into English:

1. Nūmītor gēmīnōs esse frātrēs audīvit. 2. Sīmūlāvī mē fūrēre. 3. Sīmūlābat sē fūrēre. 4. Germānī mēmōrant fuisse āpud eōs Hercūlem. 5. Caesar dixit Cātōnem glōriāe<sup>1</sup> suae invīdisse. 6. Fāma<sup>2</sup> est jūvēm dīvīna spēciē<sup>3</sup> vīsum esse ab Hannībāle.<sup>4</sup> 7. Scythārum rex Ōrestem<sup>5</sup> nēcārī jussit. 8. Pars nēgandum<sup>6</sup> (esse<sup>7</sup>) nōn pūtat auxīlium. 9. Dōcēbo Rullum tēcēre. 10. Plūra dē Jūgurthā scrībēre dēhortātur mē fortūna mea. 11. Fōre<sup>8</sup> mē in discrīmīne vīdeo. 12. Ipsum consūlem Rōmae<sup>9</sup> mănēre optīmum vīsum<sup>10</sup> est. 13. Admōnēmus civēs nōs eandem patriam incolēre. 14. Nullōs hōnōrēs mīhi dēcernī vōlo. 15. Id justum exsīlium esse decernit sēnātus. 16. Sāpientem cīvem mē et esse et nūmērārī vōlo.

**Notes.**—1. See 54. 2. *Fāma est* is equivalent to a verb of *saying*. 3. See 69. 4. See 70. 5. See 84, 3. 6. See 38, II. 7. *Esse* is often omitted from the compound tenses of the infinitive. 8. See Note, p. 47. 9. See 82, 1. 10. *Vīsum est*, *it seemed*; a deponent verb, here used impersonally.

## VOCABULARY.

*nuntio, āre, āvī, ātūm*, to announce.—| *occīdo, ōre, īdi, īsum*, to kill, slay.  
*ēlēphantus, ī, m.*, an elephant.

II. *Translate into Latin* :

1. The slave says that (his) master is not at-home. 2. The orator will pretend that he<sup>1</sup> is mad. 3. We know that the sun is larger than the earth.<sup>2</sup> 4. Do you think that you are giving a copper to an elephant?<sup>3</sup> 5. Caesar ordered the Helvetians to await his arrival in that place.<sup>4</sup> 6. The general says that he<sup>1</sup> will send<sup>5</sup> all the cavalry. 7. The slave said that (his) master had not been at-home. 8. We know that the earth is smaller than the sun.<sup>2</sup> 9. We think that the Greeks will cross<sup>6</sup> the river. 10. It is announced that the enemy have crossed the river. 11. The master (= teacher) will teach those boys to be silent. 12. Caesar ordered the camp to be fortified. 13. We think the soldiers will fortify<sup>6</sup> the camp within three hours.<sup>6</sup> 14. It had been announced<sup>8</sup> that the city had been taken.<sup>5</sup> 15. It was announced<sup>8</sup> that the Scythians would cross<sup>6</sup> that river. 16. I forgot that I was (*then*) an old-man.<sup>7</sup> 17. On the journey Caesar learned that Pompey had been killed.<sup>5</sup> 18. Do you not think that the enemy will fight<sup>5</sup> bravely?

**Notes.**—1. See 45. 2. See 67. 3. Indirect object. See 54. 4. See 81, 1. 5. See 85, Note. 6. See 68. 7. Predicate. See 43. 8. Use the neuter of the participle; *nuntiātum ōrat*, *nuntiātum est*; as these verbs are used impersonally.

## THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## ITS TWO USES.

86. The subjunctive mood is used in independent sentences to express a wish, exhortation, command, concession, or a deliberative question :

As, *nē vīvam sī scio*, may I not live if I know ; *eāmus*, let us go.

**Note.**—In this independent use the subjunctive is generally translated by the auxiliaries *may, might, can, could, would, or should*.

1. The subjunctive is used in dependent clauses to express purpose, result, indirect question, or condition, and in indirect discourse :

As, *ut amēris, amābīlis esto*, that you may be loved, be lovable ; *Sīcīliam ita vexāvit, ut restitui nullō mōdō possit*, he has so pillaged Sicily, that it can in no way be restored ; *nātūra dēclārat quid vēlit*, nature makes known what she wishes.

In the first example, *ut amēris* is a (purpose) clause dependent on *amābīlis esto*. In the second, *ut restitui nullō mōdō possit* is a (result) clause dependent on *Sīcīliam ita vexāvit*. In the third, *quid vēlit* is a clause dependent on *nātūra dēclārat*.

**Note.**—In its dependent use the subjunctive is generally translated by the *indicative* ; as in the examples.

## 1. OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

87. The subjunctive is used to express a wish or an exhortation :

As, *sīs felix*, may you be happy ; *īmītēmur mājorēs nostrōs*, let us imitate our ancestors ; *nē mē attingās*, touch me not.

1. The present and (rarely) the perfect subjunctive express a wish whose fulfilment is possible ; the imperfect and pluperfect express a wish whose fulfilment is impossible.

**Note 1.**—With the optative subjunctive *not* is expressed by *nē*.

**Note 2.**—*Ūtīnam*, *would that, O that*, often precedes the subjunctive of wish ; as, *ūtīnam vīvēret*, *would that he were (now) living*.

Notice the translation of *vīvēret*, *he were (now) living*.

**Note 3.**—In the third person the wish is sometimes expressed as a mild command or prohibition ; as, *aut, bībat aut ābeat*, let him either drink or go away ; *puer tēlum nē hābeat*, let not a boy have a weapon.



## VOCABULARY.

beātus, a, um, happy.	ac, conj., and; in comparisons, than.
ālīter, adv., otherwise.	salvus, a, um, safe, secure.
sentio, īre, sī, sum, to feel, think.	sī, conj., if.
adscribo, ēre, psī, ptum, to enroll.	vērē, adv., truly.
cervix, īcis, f., the neck.	bōreās, ae, m., the north wind.
mīnistro, āre, āvī, ātum, to furnish, supply.	
jūvo, āre, jūvī, jūtum, to help, assist.	

## I. Translate into English :

1. Vāleant civēs meī; sint beatī. 2. Nē sim salvus, sī ālīter scribo ac sentio. 3. Ūtīnam ēgo tertius vōbīs<sup>1</sup> āmīcus adscribērer. 4. Stet haec urbs. 5. Ūtīnam is Rōmae<sup>2</sup> esset. 6. Illud ūtīnam nē vērē scribērem. 7. Pōpūlōs jūvēs tua sacra cōlentēs.<sup>3</sup> 8. Dī mēliōra<sup>4</sup> vēlint. 9. Contrā bōream ōvis arma mīnistret. 10. Ūtīnam pōpūlus Rōmānus ūnam<sup>5</sup> cervīcem hābēret. 11. Āmēs dīcī<sup>6</sup> pāter atque princeps.

Notes.—1. Vōbīs, to you. See 56. 2. 82, 1. 3. Cōlentēs agrees with pōpūlōs. 4. A neuter adjective is often used in Latin without a noun; in such cases the word *thing* or *things* is to be supplied in translating. 5. Ūnam = *but one*. 6. Dīcī, to be spoken of = *to be called*.

## VOCABULARY.

aemulor, ārī, ātus, dep., to emulate.	vērus, a, um, true.
mājores, um, m., ancestors.	vātes, is, m. and f., a prophet.
āro, āre, āvī, ātum, to plough.	mēliōra, neut. pl., better things.

## II. Translate into Latin :

1. May you all be citizens useful to the state. 2. May we always be friends. 3. Let us hope-for better<sup>1</sup> things. 4. Let us emulate the virtues of (our) ancestors. 5. Would that I were enrolled a friend<sup>2</sup> (to =) among these men.<sup>3</sup> 6. Let the ox plough. 7. May the oxen plough. 8. O that I may not be a true prophet. 9. Would that he were (now) at Athens.<sup>4</sup> 10. Let us love (our) country; let us obey the senate.<sup>5</sup> 11. Let him not cross the river. 12. Would that

he had not crossed the river. 13. Let the consul lead forth the army, and may our soldiers fight bravely. 14. Would that he had not done this (*neut.*). 15. O that he were wise.

**Notes.**—1. *Neut. plur.* 2. *Predicate*; see 43. 3. See 56. 4. See 82, 1. 5. See 56.

## SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

88. Examine the two following sentences :

1. *I read that I may learn*; and
2. *I was reading that I might learn.*

You will see that the **present** tense **read** is followed by the **present** tense **may learn**; and the **past** tense **was reading** is followed by the **past** tense **might learn**.

The same rule holds in Latin, thus :

**Lēgo ut discam**, *I read that I may learn*;

**Lēgēbam ut discērem**, *I was reading that I might learn.*

1. Hence, **primary** tenses of the indicative are followed by **primary** tenses of the subjunctive, and **secondary** tenses of the indicative by **secondary** tenses of the subjunctive.

**Note 1.**—For the two classes of tenses, primary and secondary, see 28, 6.

**Note 2.**—Remember that the **perfect** tense may be either primary or secondary. (See 28, 5.) Thus :

**Vēnī ut vīdērem**, *I came that I might see* (*Historical Perf.*).

**Vēnī ut vīdeam**, *I have come that I may see* (*Perf. Definite*).

Observe these rules in the following exercises.

## 2. SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE.

89. The subjunctive is used to express a purpose after **ut**, *that*, **nē** or **ut nē**, *that not*, and **quō**, *that, in order that* :

As, **vēnio ut vīdeam**, *I come that I may see* = *I come to see*; **ābiī nē vīdērem**, *I went away that I might not see*; **adjūtā mē, quō id fiat facilius**, *help me, that that may be done more easily*.

**Note 1.**—The subjunctive in purpose clauses may often be translated by the English infinitive; as in the first example.

**Note 2.**—**Quō** is preferred when the purpose clause has a comparative in it; as in the last example.

## VOCABULARY.

<i>occāsio</i> , ōnis, <i>f.</i> , opportunity.	<i>tūtus</i> , a, um, safe.
<i>permitto</i> , ěre, īsī, <i>issum</i> , to permit.	<i>prōbo</i> , āre, āvī, ātum, to approve.
<i>invoco</i> , āre, āvī, ātum, to call upon.	<i>impedio</i> , ěre, īvī, ětum, to hinder.
<i>respondeo</i> , ěre, dī, <i>sum</i> , to answer.	<i>pons</i> , tis, <i>m.</i> , a bridge.
<i>Sōlon</i> , ōnis, <i>m.</i> , Solon.	<i>incito</i> , āre, āvī, ātum, to incite.
<i>Galba</i> , ae, <i>m.</i> , Galba.	<i>dimitto</i> , ěre, īsī, <i>issum</i> , to let go.
<i>hortor</i> , ārī, ātus, <i>dep.</i> , to urge.	<i>haec</i> , <i>neut. plur.</i> , these things.
<i>impēro</i> , āre, āvī, ātum, to command.	
<i>cōnor</i> , ārī, ātus, <i>dep.</i> , to try, attempt.	
<i>pēto</i> , ěre, īvī or īī, ětum, to seek, beg.	
<i>Pŷthia</i> , ae, <i>f.</i> , the Pythia, or priestess of Apollo.	

I. *Translate into English:*

1. Caesar Galbae<sup>1</sup> permīsit, ut in iīs lōcīs lēgiōnem collocāret. 2. Miltiādes hortātus est pontis custōdēs, nē occāsionem dīmīttērent. 3. Pŷthia respondit, ut moenībus ligneīs sē dēfendērent. 4. Tarquīniī<sup>2</sup> rēgem incītāvērunt, ut Rōmānīs<sup>3</sup> bellum inferret. 5. Ā vōbīs pēto nē dēhortandō<sup>4</sup> impēdire conēmīnī. 6. Sōlon, quō tūtior vīta esset, fūrēre<sup>5</sup> sē sīmūlāvit. 7. Ā vōbīs pēto ut consīlium prōbētis meum. 8. Sēnex mortem invōcāvit, ut sē omnībus mālīs<sup>6</sup> libērāret. 9. Servīs<sup>7</sup> suīs Rullus ut jānuam clauderent impērāvit. 10. Pŷthia respondit, ut Miltiādēm impērātōrem sībi<sup>8</sup> sūmērent.

**Notes.**—1. See 54. 2. Tarquīniī, the Tarquins, plur. of Tarquīnius. 3. See 56. 4. See 66. 5. See 84. 6. See 72. 7. See 54; in this sentence the principal clause is Rullus impērāvit servīs suīs. 8. See 54.

II. *Translate into Latin:*

1. We are all slaves of the laws, that we may be free. 2. We read that we may learn. 3. We have come to see (= that we may see) you. 4. We came to see (= that we might see) you. 5. I shall urge Cato not to let go (= that he may not let go) the opportunity. 6. We shall guard the city in order that the life of the citizens may be safer.

7. The Pythia answered that they should fortify themselves with wooden walls. 8. The consul had led-forth the army to defend (= that he might defend) the state. 9. I shall proceed to Carthage<sup>1</sup> that I may not see the battle. 10. We call-upon the gods to liberate (= that they may liberate) us from these evils.<sup>2</sup> 11. I shall urge the citizens not to approve (= that they may not approve) that plan (of yours). 12. The general had commanded the legion<sup>3</sup> not to cross (= that it should not cross) the river.

Notes.—1. See 51. 2. See 72. 3. See 54.

### 3. SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE WITH QUĪ.

90. The subjunctive with the relative quī is used to express a purpose :

As, *lēgātōs Āthēnās mīsērunt, quī eum accūsārent*, they sent ambassadors to Athens (who might accuse =) to accuse him or who were to accuse him, or that they might accuse him.

Note 1.—When thus used, the relative quī = *ut is, ut ea, ut iī*, etc., according to the antecedent. In the above example, *quī accūsārent* = *ut iī accūsārent*.

Note 2.—The subjunctive of purpose with quī may generally be translated in any of the above three ways, but the English infinitive often gives the neatest rendering.

Quī, in the proper form, is to be used in the following exercises.

### VOCABULARY.

*condīcio, ōnis, f.*, condition ; terms. | *Leōnidas, ae, m.*, Leonidas.

*postūlo, āre, āvī, ātum*, to demand. | *nuntius, ī, m.*, a messenger.

*Thermōpylae, ārum, f.*, Thermopylae.

*advēnio, īre, vēnī, ventum*, to arrive.

#### I. Translate into English :

1. Rex *lēgātōs mīsīt Rōmam, quī pācis condīciōnēs ferrent*.<sup>1</sup> 2. *Cīvēs lēgātōs Rōmam quī auxīlium ā sēnātū pētērent mīsere*.<sup>2</sup> 3. *Eō tempōre lēgātus advēnit, quī ob-*

sīdēs postūlāret. 4. Mīlītēs missī sunt cum Leōnīdā, quī Thermōpylās occūpārent. 5. Haec<sup>3</sup> hābuī de sēnectūte quae dicērem. 6. Dux nuntiōs ad sēnātum mittit, quī hortentur ut auxiliā mittant.<sup>4</sup> 7. Haec hābuī dē āmīcītiā quae dicērem. 8. Īsocrātes scrībēbat ōrātiōnēs, quās<sup>5</sup> āliī dicērent. 9. Ea<sup>6</sup> quī confīcēret, lēgātum<sup>7</sup> rēliquit. 10. Mīsī quī<sup>8</sup> hoc Antōniō dicēret.

Notes.—1. Ferrent, to bear = propose. 2. Mīsere = mīsērunt. This word belongs to the principal clause. 3. Haec = these things. Quae dicērem = ut ea dicērem. 4. Ut mittant comes under 89. 5. Quās āliī dicērent = ut eās āliī dicērent. 6. Ea, those things; neut. pl. 7. Lēgātum, not an ambassador here. 8. Quī. The antecedent is omitted; translate a man who, or, a man to.

## VOCABULARY.

consūlo, ěre, uī, tum, to consult.	pōcūlum, ī, n., a cup.
Diōgēnes, is, m., Diogenes.	ea, neut, plur., those things.
Lācēdaemōnius, ī, m., a Lacedaemonian.	
sustīneo, ěre, tīnuī, tentum, to sustain, resist.	
sōleo, ěre, sōlītus sum, to be accustomed. (See 37.)	

## II. Translate into Latin :

1. The queen sends ambassadors to Corinth<sup>1</sup> (who may propose =) to propose<sup>2</sup> terms of peace. 2. Men were sent to Delphi<sup>1</sup> (who might consult =) to consult Apollo. 3. The Lacedaemonians had sent ambassadors to Athens<sup>1</sup> (who might accuse =) to accuse Miltiades. 4. The commander sent all the cavalry (who might sustain =) to sustain the attack of the enemy. 5. I sent a messenger to say this (neut.) to you.<sup>3</sup> 6. Diogenes was accustomed to carry a cup with-which<sup>4</sup> (he might draw =) to draw water for himself.<sup>3</sup> 7. I shall not write orations (which others may speak =) for others to speak. 8. At that time<sup>5</sup> a messenger arrived (who might demand =) to demand money.

Notes.—1. See 51. 2. See Note 1, preceding exercise. 3. See 54. 4. See 66. 5. See 68.

## 4. SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT.

91. *Ut, that, ut nōn, that not, and quin, but that*, are used with the subjunctive to express a consequence or a result :

As, *tantus tīmor exercitum occupāvit, ut omnium mentēs perturbāret*, so great fear seized the army, that it disturbed the minds of all ; *numquam accēdo quin ābeam doctior*, I never come (but that I go away =) without going away more learned.

**Note 1.**—That not in result clauses is *ut nōn* ; while in purpose clauses (see 89) it is *nē* or *ut nē*.

**Note 2.**—The subjunctive in result clauses is generally translated by the indicative ; as in the examples.

**Note 3.**—*Quin* may often be neatly translated by *from* or *without*, and the accompanying verb by a participle in *-ing* ; as in the last example.

## VOCABULARY.

*ōdium*, ī, *n.*, hatred.

*saepe*, *adv.*, often.

*accīdo*, ēre, īdī, —, to happen.

*Graecō*, *adv.*, Greek, in Greek.

*prōdūco*, ēre, xī, otum, to prolong.

*Sīcīlia*, ae, *f.*, Sicily.

*tēnēbrae*, ārum, *f.*, darkness.

*dēbeo*, ēre, uī, ītum, to owe.

*sīc*, *adv.*, so, in such a manner.

*lōquor*, ī, cūtus, *dep.*, to speak.

*augeo*, ēre, xī, otum, to increase.

*Lātīnē*, *adv.*, Latin, in Latin.

*agnosco*, ēre, nōvī, nītum, to recognize.

*nē—quīdem* (with a word between), not even.

## I. Translate into English :

1. Antōnius tantō ōdiō<sup>1</sup> fērēbātur in<sup>2</sup> Cīcērōnem, ut omnībus ejus āmicīs<sup>3</sup> esset īnīmīcus. 2. Tantaē fuērunt tēnēbrae, ut nēmo<sup>4</sup> hōmīnem hōmo agnosceret. 3. Tītus faciilitātis<sup>5</sup> tantaē fuit et libērālītātis,<sup>5</sup> ut nēmīnī quidquam<sup>6</sup> nēgāret. 4. In castellō nēmo fuit omnium mīlītum,<sup>7</sup> quin vulnērārētur. 5. Saepe fit,<sup>8</sup> ut īī, quī dēbent, nōn respondeant ad tempus. 6. Nē deus quīdem pōtest facere,<sup>9</sup> ut, quī<sup>10</sup> vixit, nōn vixerit. 7. Accīdit<sup>11</sup> ut id, quod Rōmae<sup>12</sup> audiērat,<sup>13</sup> prīmus<sup>14</sup> nuntiāret. 8. Attīcus sic Graecō lōquēbātur, ut Athēnīs<sup>12</sup> nātus vīdērētur. 9. Hīs diēbus<sup>15</sup> īta prōduxī vītā, ut auxerim<sup>16</sup> dōlōrēs sīne spē sālūtis. 10. Accidit ut esset plēna lūna.

**Notes.**—1. See 66. 2. *In* = *against*. 3. See 53. 4. *Nemo* is used as an adjective = *no*. 5. See 61. 6. Latin says *anything to no one*, but English requires *nothing to any one*. 7. See 60. 8. *Fit*, *it is done* = *it happens*. 9. *Făcēre*, *make* = *cause*. 10. For antecedent to *quī* supply *is*, which is often omitted. 11. *Accōdit*, used impersonally; *it happened*. 12. See 82, 1. 13. See Note, page 98. 14. *Primus* with a verb means that the subject *was the first to do so* and so; here *was the first to announce*. 15. See 68. 16. The perfect *auxōrim* shows that *prōduxī* is a perfect definite. See 88, 1.

## II. Translate into Latin :

1. I prolong life in-such-a-manner that I do not increase the pains. 2. He had prolonged life in-such-a-manner that he increased the pains without the hope of safety. 3. He speaks Latin in-such-a-manner that he seems born at Rome.<sup>1</sup> 4. It happens<sup>2</sup> that it is full moon. 5. It happened<sup>2</sup> that he was the first to announce the victory. 6. There is no one at Corinth<sup>1</sup> but that knows. 7. There is no one at Lilybaeum<sup>1</sup> but that has seen, no one in<sup>3</sup> Sicily but that has heard. 8. The darkness is so-great that I do not recognize you. 9. Not even Jupiter is able to cause (*make*) that day is night. 10. It happened<sup>2</sup> that the stars were very-bright.

**Notes.**—1. See 82, 1. 2. Use *accīdo*. 3. See 81, 1.

## 5. SUBJUNCTIVE OF INDIRECT QUESTION.

### 92. Indirect questions take the subjunctive :

*As, nātūra dēclārat quid vēlit, nature makes known what she wishes; dīo, oūr prōpērēs, tell why you hasten.*

In the first example, *quid vēlit* is an indirect question, and *vēlit* is in the subjunctive. The direct question was, *Quid vult nātūra? What does nature wish?*

In the second example, *oūr prōpērēs* is an indirect question, and *prōpērēs* is in the subjunctive. The direct question would be, *Cūr prōpērās? Why do you hasten?*

**Note 1.**—An indirect question is always a dependent clause introduced by some interrogative word, which connects it with the principal clause.

**Note 2.**—The subjunctive in indirect questions is generally translated by the indicative; as in the examples.

1. **Whether**—or, in an alternative question, is **utrum**—an; and **whether**—or not, is **utrum**—**ne**one:

As, **Puērī utrum lēgant an scrībant nescio**, *I don't know whether the boys are reading or writing*; **utrum lēgat neque nescio**, *I don't know whether he is reading or not*.

**Note 1.**—**Utrum** is sometimes omitted in alternative questions.

**Note 2.**—The appended **nē** in indirect questions means **whether**.

## VOCABULARY.

**vincūlum**, ī, *n.*, a chain, fetter.

**testis**, is, *m. and f.*, a witness.

**ūbi**, *adv.*, where.

**cūra**, ae, *f.*, care.

**dūbīus**, a, *um*, doubtful.

**īter facere** = to march.

**mīserīcordia**, ae, *f.*, pity, compassion.

**quī, quae, quod**, *adj. pron.*, which, what.

**ōpīnor, ārī, ātus**, *dep.*, to be of opinion.

**ādhibeo, ēre, uī, ītum**, to employ, apply.

**quaero, ēre, sīvī, sītum**, to inquire, ask.

**que**, *conj.*, and. *It is appended to the word before which it would naturally come*; as, **sēnātus pōpulusque**, *the senate and people*.

### I. Translate into English:

1. **Dīc'** mīhi cūr vincūla gērās.<sup>2</sup> 2. Scythā rōgātus est, quae nāvēs essent tūtissimae. 3. Sed deōs<sup>3</sup> nōn cūrāre<sup>4</sup> ōpīnor, quid agat hūmānum gēnus. 4. Ōrātor quīdam rōgāvit, vīdērēturne<sup>5</sup> mīserīcordiam mōvisse. 5. Quae causa sōnītum dāret, nōn vīdīmus. 6. Quantam cūram dīlīgēntiamque hōc tempōre ādhībuērīm, vōs testēs<sup>6</sup> hābeo. 7. Dī utrum sint neque, quaerītur.<sup>7</sup> 8. Dūbīum est, utrum Attīcum āmicī māgis vērērentur an āmārent. 9. Dōcē mē, ūbi sint dīī. 10. Caesar ēquītātum omnem mittit, quī<sup>7</sup> vīdeat,<sup>7</sup> quās<sup>8</sup> in partēs hostēs īter faciānt.

**Notes.**—1. **Dīc** (not **dīce**) is the imperative of **dīco**. 2. **Gērās**, you carry, *i. e.*, you wear. 3. See 84. 4. See 92, 1, Note 2. 5. **Testēs**, as



witnesses. 6. Translate with *it*. 7. See 90. 8. *Quās* is the interrogative word. The order is, in *quās partēs*.

*nescio, ire, ivī, itum*, I do not know.

## II. Translate into Latin :

1. I shall ask the sailor what ships are the safest. 2. You ask me why I am sad. 3. I shall ask Cato why he does so (*ita*). 4. I asked Cato why he was doing so. 5. We do not see what cause gives the sound. 6. I-do-not-know whether Cicero is in<sup>1</sup> the city or not. 7. Mother does-not-know which-of-the-two is in<sup>1</sup> the garden. 8. I inquired where he was. 9. It is doubtful whether the enemy (*plural*) have conquered or have been conquered. 10. I know who<sup>2</sup> taught you<sup>3</sup> music.<sup>3</sup>

Notes.—1. See 81, 1. 2. The interrogative. 3. See 49.

## 6. SUBJUNCTIVE WITH CUM.

### 1. Cum Temporal.

93. *Cum*, *when*, generally takes the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive in narrative statements :

As, *Āgēsīlāus, cum ex Aegyptō rēvertērētur, dēcessit*, *Agesilāus died when he was returning from Egypt* ; *Ālexander, cum intērēmisset Clītum, vix ā sēsē mănūs abstīnuit*, *Alexander with difficulty kept his hands from himself, when he had slain Clītus*.

Note 1.—The historical perfect generally stands in the principal clause.

Note 2.—Notice that this subjunctive is generally translated by the indicative.

## VOCABULARY.

<i>incōpio, 3re, cōpī, ceptum</i> , to begin.	<i>trīduum, ī, n.</i> , three days.
<i>diū, adv.</i> , long, a long time.	<i>contendo, 3re, dī, tum</i> , to hurry on.
<i>pābūlum, ī, n.</i> , forage, food.	<i>sic, adv.</i> , so, thus.
<i>abjicio, 3re, jēcī, jectum</i> , to throw away.	
<i>prīmum, adv.</i> , first ; <i>cum prīmum</i> , when first = as soon as.	
<i>pōtior, īrī, itus, dep.</i> , to gain possession of. <i>Governs the ablat.</i>	

I. *Translate into English :*

1. Diōgēnes, cum vīdēret puērum mānībus<sup>2</sup> āquam haurientem,<sup>1</sup> pōcūlum abiecit. 2. Ipse,<sup>3</sup> cum prīmum pābūlī cōpia esse incīpēret, ad exercītum vēnit. 3. Diū cum esset pugnātum,<sup>4</sup> impedimentīs<sup>5</sup> castrīs<sup>6</sup> quē<sup>6</sup> pōtītī sunt. 4. Cum trīduī viam prōcessisset, nuntiātum<sup>4</sup> est eī<sup>7</sup> Ariovis-tum<sup>8</sup> cum<sup>9</sup> suis omnībus cōpiīs contendere.<sup>8</sup> 5. Caesar, cum ab hīs quaerēret, quae cīvītātēs in armīs essent,<sup>10</sup> sic rēpēriēbat.

**Notes.**—1. Haurientem agrees with puērum. See 41. 2. See 66. 3. Ipse, with *he* implied in the verb = *he himself*. 4. Translate with *it*; the verb is impersonal. *Esset nuntiātum* = *nuntiātum esset*. 5. See 78. 6. On the position of *que*, see *Vocab.*, p. 154. 7. *Eī*, to *him*. 8. See 84. 9. *Cum* is a preposition here. 10. *Quae* — *essent* is an indirect question; *quae* is the interrogative word. See 92.

## VOCABULARY.

Ancōna, ae, <i>f.</i> , Ancona, <i>in Italy</i> .	infans, tis, <i>m. and f.</i> , an infant.
nuptiae, ārum, <i>f.</i> , a marriage.	Zēno, ōnis, <i>m.</i> , Zeno.
Aegisthus, ī, <i>m.</i> , Aegisthus.	frēquenter, <i>adv.</i> , frequently.
rēverto, ěre, tī, <i>sum</i> , to return.	cēlēbro, āre, āvī, ātum, to celebrate.
	adsum, esse, fuī, —, to be present.
	Āgāmēmnōn, ōnis, <i>m.</i> , Agamemnon.
	interficio, ěre, fēcī, fectum, to kill, slay.

II. *Translate into Latin* (the order of the Latin clauses, principal and dependent, is imitated in these sentences) :

1. When Caesar had occupied Ancona, we left the city. 2. Hercules, when he was an infant, killed<sup>1</sup> two serpents with (his) hands. 3. When the marriage was being celebrated,<sup>2</sup> all the gods and goddesses were-present.<sup>3</sup> 4. Agamemnon, when he had returned, was slain by Aegisthus.<sup>4</sup> 5. Zeno, when I was at Athens,<sup>5</sup> I heard<sup>3</sup> frequently.

**Notes.**—1. Use *nēco*. 2. Plural. 3. Imperfect. 4. See 70. 5. See 82, 1.

## 7. SUBJUNCTIVE WITH CUM.

## 2. Cum Causal or Concessive.

94. Cum takes the subjunctive when it means *as, since* (because), or *although* :

As, cum milītes pēriculū vērērentur, nōn audēbant confīgere, *as* (because) the soldiers feared danger, they did not dare to engage; Pylādēs cum sīs, dicēs tē esse Ōrestem? *although you are Pylades, will you say that you are Orestes?*

**Note.**—The subjunctive with cum causal or concessive is translated by the indicative; as in the examples.

## VOCABULARY.

rātio, ōnis, *f.*, reason.

dōlus, ī, *m.*, artifice, deceit.

nēcesse, *indeclin. adj.*, necessary.

pār, pāris, *adj.*, equal.

nīhil, *as adv.*, not, not at all.

consīlium, ī, *n.*, deliberation.

pāro, āre, āvī, ātum, to prepare, procure.

pergo, ěre, perrexī, perrectum, to go on, continue.

adjūvo, āre, jūvī, jūtum, to help, assist, aid.

## I. Translate into English :

1. Cum vīta sīne āmicīs mētūs<sup>1</sup> plēna sit, rātio ipsa mōnet āmicītiās pārāre. 2. Dōlō<sup>2</sup> erat pugnandum,<sup>3</sup> cum pār nōn esset armīs.<sup>4</sup> 3. Quae<sup>5</sup> cum īta sint, Cātīlīna, perge. 4. Cum sint in nōbīs consīlium, rātio, prūdentia, necesse est Deum<sup>6</sup> haec<sup>7</sup> ipsa hābēre<sup>8</sup> mājōra.<sup>8</sup> 5. Nīhil mē adjūvit, cum<sup>9</sup> posset.

**Notes.**—1. See 62. 2. See 66. 3. *Ērat pugnandum*, used impersonally: *it had to be fought* = *he had to fight*. 4. See 71. 5. *Quae*, *which things* = *these things*. A relative at the beginning of a sentence must often be translated by a demonstrative. 6. See 84. 7. *Haec ipsa*, *these things themselves* (these very qualities). 8. *Mājōra*, literally, *greater* = *in greater degree*. 9. What meaning has cum here?

## VOCABULARY.

Pompōnia, ae, *f.*, wife of Q. Cicero.

fōras, *adv.*, out of doors, out.

Q in Roman names = Quintus.

cēna, ae, *f.*, dinner.

cēno, āre, āvī, ātum, to dine.

Phōcion, ōnis, *m.*, Phocion.

virtūs, ūtis, *f.*, courage. [proach.

apprōpinquo, āre, āvī, ātum, to ap-

II. *Translate into Latin :*

1. As night is approaching, let us withdraw. 2. Cicero comes to us<sup>1</sup> to dinner,<sup>1</sup> because Pomponia is dining out. 3. Cicero came to us to dinner, as Pomponia was dining out. 4. Since we surpass all<sup>2</sup> in courage,<sup>3</sup> we shall take the city. 5. Phocion was poor, although he was able to be very-rich.<sup>4</sup>

**Notes.**—1. See 81, 3. 2. See 56. 3. See 71. 4. Super. of *dīs*.

8. SUBJUNCTIVE OF CAUSE WITH *QUĪ*.

95. A relative clause expressing the reason of the principal clause takes the subjunctive :

As, *O fortunāte ādūlescens, quī tuas virtūtis Hōmērum praecōnem invēnēris*, *O fortunate young man, because (in that) you have found a Homer the herald of your valor.*

Here the relative clause *quī—invēnēris* gives the reason of the young man's good fortune; and *invēnēris* is in the subjunctive.

When thus used, the relative = *because (as, since) I, you, he, they*, etc., according to the antecedent. In the example, *quī* = *because you*, as *ādūlescens* is in the second person, singular.

**Note.**—The subjunctive thus used is translated by the indicative.

## VOCABULARY.

<i>consulātus, ūs, m.</i> , the consulship.	<i>pecco, āre, āvī, ātum</i> , to err, sin.
<i>vectīgal, ālis, n.</i> , revenue.	<i>dētērior, us, compar. adj.</i> , worse.

I. *Translate into English :*

1. Fuit mīrīfīcā vīgīlantiā<sup>1</sup> Cānīnius, quī tōtō suō consulātū<sup>2</sup> somnum nōn vīdērit. 2. Peccāvisse mīhi vīdeor,<sup>3</sup> quī<sup>4</sup> ā tē discessērim. 3. Ariovistus dixit Caesārem<sup>5</sup> injūriam fācēre,<sup>5</sup> quī vectīgālia dētēriōra fācēret.

**Notes.**—1. See 70. 2. See 68. 3. *Vīdeor*, the deponent; translate *mīhi*, *to myself*. 4. As *quī* here relates to *ego* implied in the verb, it is equivalent to *because (in that) I*. 5. See 84.

## VOCABULARY.

<i>caecus, a, um</i> , blind.	<i>ante, adv.</i> , before, previously.
<i>fortunātus, a, um</i> , fortunate.	<i>invēnio, īre, vēnī, ventum</i> , to find.

II. *Translate into Latin :*

1. I am blind, in that (because) I have not seen these-things<sup>1</sup> before. 2. He was blind in that (because) he had not seen these-things before. 3. I am wretched because I was<sup>2</sup> not present.<sup>2</sup> 4. He was wretched because he had<sup>2</sup> not been<sup>2</sup> present.<sup>2</sup> 5. Caesar was doing<sup>3</sup> an injury because he was making<sup>3</sup> the revenues worse (*i. e.*, less). 6. O fortunate slave, in that you have found Atticus (as your) master.<sup>4</sup>

**Notes.**—1. The neut. plur. will stand for both words. 2. Use *adsum*. Which tense? Refer to 88, 1. Primary tenses follow primary. 3. Use *facio*. Which tense in the relative clause? Secondary tenses follow secondary. 4. Use *hærus*.

**Definition.**

In conditional sentences, the clause containing the **condition** is called the *protasis*, and that containing the **conclusion** is called the *apodosis*.

Thus, in the sentence, *I would not do that, if I were you*, the clause *if I were you* is the *protasis*; and the clause *I would not do that* is the *apodosis*.

9. SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

96. In conditions stated as *contrary to fact*, both in *protasis* and *apodosis*, the **imperfect subjunctive** is used of **present time**, and the **pluperfect subjunctive** of **past time** :

As, *pācem nōn pētērem, nisi ūtilem crēdērem*, *I would not (now) seek peace, unless I (now) believed it useful*; *sī scīissem, vēnissem*, *if I had known, I would have come*; *gaudērem, sī id accōdisset*, *I would (now) rejoice, if that had happened*.

In the first example, the supposition that I did *not* believe it useful is *contrary to the fact*; in the second, the supposition that I knew is *contrary to the fact*; etc.

**Note 1.**—The *protasis* may have the **pluperfect** and the *apodosis* the **imperfect**, or vice versa, according to the sense required.

**Note 2.**—The *protasis* is generally translated by the **indicative**, as in the examples.

**Note 3.**—The protasis is often introduced by *sī*, *if*, *nīsi* (*nī*), *if not*, *unless*, or *sī nōn*, *if not*, *unless*.

**Note 4.**—The present and perfect subjunctive are also frequently used in protasis and apodosis.

## VOCABULARY.

*nūper*, *adv.*, lately.

*consīlium*, *i*, *n.*, a council; a plan.

*mōdestus*, *a, um*, modest.

*nosco*, *ēre*, *nōvī*, *nōtum*, to know.

*rēligo*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, to bind.

*lūdus*, *i*, *m.*, play, game; *lūdī*, the public games.

*tōt*, *indeclin. adj.*, so many.

*nunc*, *adv.*, now.

*vultus*, *ūs*, *m.*, the countenance.

*efficio*, *ēre*, *fēcī*, *fectum*, to effect.

*expēto*, *ēre*, *īvī*, *itum*, to seek for.

## I. Translate into English:

1. *Māgis id dīcērēs, sī nūper in hortīs Scīpiōnis adfuissēs.* 2. *Sī Ibi tē<sup>1</sup> esse<sup>1</sup> scissem,<sup>2</sup> ad tē ipse<sup>3</sup> vēnissem.* 3. *Sī meum consīlium vāluisset, respublīca nōn tōt dūcēs et exercītūs āmisisset.* 4. *Hectōrem quis nosset,<sup>2</sup> sī fēlix<sup>4</sup> Trōja fuisset?* 5. *Mōriar,<sup>5</sup> sī māgis gaudērem, sī id mīhi accīdisset.* 6. *Nīsi Marcellus lūdōs nunc fācēret,<sup>6</sup> huīc nostrō sermōnī intēresset.* 7. *Consīlium, rātio, sententia nīsi<sup>7</sup> essent in sēnībūs, nōn summum consīlium<sup>8</sup> mājorēs nostrī appellassent<sup>2</sup> sēnātum.<sup>9</sup>* 8. *Sāpientia nōn expētērētur, sī nīhil effīcēret.* 9. *Mānībūs<sup>10</sup> mōdestōs cēlasset<sup>2</sup> vultūs, sī nōn rēligāta<sup>11</sup> fuisset.<sup>12</sup>*

**Notes.**—1. See 84. 2. Contractions, for *scīvissem*, *nōvisset*, *appellāvissent*, *cēlāvissent*. 3. *Ipsē*, with *ēgo* implied in the verb = *ēgo ipse*. 4. Predicate. 5. *Mōriar* (a subjunctive of wish) is the apodosis. *Sī*—*accīdisset* is a second protasis depending on the first one. 6. *Fācēret* (*were doing*) = *were conducting*. 7. Begin with *nīsi essent*. 8. *Consīlium* here = *council*. 9. Predicate accus. 10. See 66. 11. The feminine participle shows that the subject is *ea* (*she*) understood. 12. See Note 3, page 54.

## VOCABULARY.

*dēlecto*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, to delight.

*turpīter*, *adv.*, shamefully.

*sānus*, *a, um*, sane, rational.

*sī nōn*, *if not*, *unless*.

II. *Translate into Latin* (using in both protasis and apodosis either the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, according as the time is present or past):

1. If I spoke (*or should speak*), I would not be heard.
2. If I had spoken, I would not have been heard.
3. Unless Caesar had conquered the Gauls, he would have been conquered by them.<sup>1</sup>
4. If she (*ea*) had not been changed, she would have related everything.<sup>2</sup>
5. If you had read that book, you would have been delighted.
6. If I were able, I would be more rational.
7. If I had-been-able, I would have been more rational.
8. I would have done shamefully, if I had not defended this man.
9. I would do (act) shamefully, if I did not defend this man.
10. The soldiers would not have proceeded, unless the commander had ordered.

Notes.—1. See 70. 2. Neut. plur. of *omnis*.

## ORATIO OBLIQUA,

Or Indirect Discourse.

### Definition.

**Oratio Obliqua**, or indirect discourse, is speech reported, not in the exact words of the original, but with a change in the pronouns, moods, or tenses.

Thus, if A says: "I have come back because I forgot something;" the speech reported in oratio obliqua would be: A said that he had come back because he had forgotten something.

**Oratio recta**, or direct discourse, is speech quoted in the very words of the speaker or writer.

97. In oratio obliqua principal clauses take the infinitive with a subject accusative; dependent clauses take the subjunctive.

## Example.

## Ōrātiō Recta.

Ob eam  
rem ex civitāte prōfūgī  
et Rōmam vēnī, quod  
nēque jūrējūrاندō nēque  
obsīdībūs tēnēbar.

## Ōrātiō Oblīqua.

*Dixit*: ob eam  
rem sē ex civitāte prōfūgisse  
et Rōmam vēnisse, quod  
nēque jūrējūrاندō nēque  
obsīdībūs tēnērētur.

## Translation.

*I fled from the state and  
came to Rome for this rea-  
son, because I was held  
neither by an oath nor by  
hostages.*

*He said: that he had fled  
from the state and had come to  
Rome for this reason, because  
he was held neither by an  
oath nor by hostages.*

In the extract quoted in oratio obliqua, you will see

1. That the principal clauses, ob—prōfūgisse, and et—vēnisse, have their verbs in the infinitive with a subject accusative.

2. That the dependent clause quod—tēnērētur has its verb in the subjunctive.

3. That sē (or suus when needed) represents the speaker. If a new subject is introduced, sē and suus may refer to it.

## VOCABULARY.

Divīco, ōnis, m., Divico.

instītuo, ōre, uī, ūtum, to train up, instruct.

consuesco, ōre, suēvī, suētum, to be accustomed.

accīpio, ōre, cēpī, ceptum, to receive.

## I. Translate into English:

Divīco respondit: Īta<sup>1</sup> Helvētiōs ā mājōrībūs<sup>2</sup> suīs  
instītūtōs esse,<sup>1</sup> ut<sup>3</sup> obsīdēs accīpēre, nōn dāre consuē-  
rint;<sup>3</sup> ējus<sup>4</sup> rēi pōpūlum Rōmānum esse testem.<sup>4</sup>

Notes.—1. Īta—instītūtōs esse is a principal clause. As Helvētiōs is the subject accusative, suīs, *their*, refers to it. 2. See 70. 3. Ut—consuērint (= consuēvērint) is a dependent clause. The verb would be subjunctive even in oratio recta by rule 91. Hence subjunctives in oratio recta remain subjunctives in oratio obliqua. 4. Ējus—testem is a principal clause. Rēi limits testem, which is predicate accusative.



## II. Translate into Latin :

Caesar answered : If hostages are given to him by them,<sup>1</sup> that<sup>2</sup> he will make peace with (*cum*) them.<sup>3</sup> If they are not given, that he will conquer them by-war.

Notes.—1. See 70. 2. That—they is a principal clause.

## THE GERUND.

98. Gerunds are governed like nouns, and govern the same cases as their verbs :

*As, ars cānendī, the art of singing ; āqua ūtīlis bībendō, water useful for drinking ; dandō glōriam ādeptus est, he gained renown by giving.*

## VOCABULARY.

praestābīlis, e, excellent.

coetus, ūs, m., an assembly.

hiēmo, āre, āvī, ātum, to winter.

cōhors, tis, f., a cohort, the tenth part of a legion.

causā, ablat., for the purpose, for the sake. *It follows the genitive governed by ū.*

tēneo, ēre, uī, tum, to hold.

expio, āre, āvī, ātum, to expiate.

ēquīto, āre, āvī, ātum, to ride.

## I. Translate into English :

1. Quid est praestābīlius, quam posse dīcendō<sup>1</sup> tēnere hōmīnum coetūs ? 2. Cuī dābit partēs<sup>2</sup> scēlus<sup>3</sup> expiandī Jūpīter ? 3. Ex discendō cāpīmus vōluptātem. 4. Caesar Galbae permīsit, ut in iīs lōcīs lēgiōnem hiēmandī causā collocāret.<sup>4</sup> 5. Partem ējus vīcī cōhortībus ad hiēmandum Caesar attribuit. 6. Caesar ēquītandī<sup>5</sup> pērītissīmus ērat. 7. Audendō<sup>6</sup> atque āgendō<sup>6</sup> rēs<sup>7</sup> Rōmāna crēvit.

Notes.—1. See 66. 2. Partēs, the part or duty. 3. See 48. 4. See 89. 5. See 62. 6. See 66. 7. Rēs here = power or state.

## VOCABULARY.

no, āre, āvī, ātum, to swim.

| stūdiōsus, a, um, fond.

fācultās, ātis, f., means ; opportunity.

trājīcio, ōre, jēcī, jectum, to cross ; to transport.

opportūnus, a, um, suitable.

II. *Translate into Latin :*

1. Many are ignorant of reading<sup>1</sup> and writing.<sup>1</sup> 2. The king made an end of speaking, and the ambassadors of Jugurtha answer. 3. This<sup>2</sup> was the cause of sending. 4. A suitable opportunity<sup>3</sup> of fighting was not given. 5. Caesar crossed<sup>4</sup> rivers by swimming. 6. The art of sailing is very-useful. 7. We<sup>5</sup> by weeping prolong<sup>6</sup> the hours. 8. The commander was fond<sup>7</sup> of hearing.

Notes.—1. See 62. 2. Feminine. 3. Use *fācultās*. 4. Use *trājīcio*. 5. Emphatic. 6. Use *dūco*. 7. Use *stūdiōsus*.

## THE GERUNDIVE.

99. The gerundive is nearly always preferred to the gerund when the latter would take an accusative ; the noun then takes the government and the gerundive agrees with it.

**Example.**

Thus, if we use the gerund, *the design of writing a letter*, is *consīlium scrībendī ēpistōlam*. But the Romans seldom use this construction.

If we use the gerundive construction, we may first think of the English sentence as being, *the design of a letter to be written* ; then we say *consīlium ēpistōlæ*, *the design of a letter* ; and as *scrībendus*, *to be written*, is the gerundive, we make it agree with *ēpistōlæ*, and it becomes *scrībendæ* ; then the phrase *consīlium scrībendæ ēpistōlæ* is translated *the design of writing a letter*.

Note 1.—The gerundive when thus used is always translated like a gerund :

As, *scientia cīvītātis rēgendæ*, *the science of governing a state* ; *ad libērandōs cīvēs*, *for freeing the citizens, or to free the citizens*.

Note 2.—*Ad* with the accusative of the gerundive is used to express purpose ; as in the last example.

## VOCABULARY.

collĭgo, ěre, lĕgĭ, lectum, to collect.	Ptolĕmaeus, ĭ, m., Ptolemy.
hostĭlis, e, hostile.	ob, prep. with acc., for.
publĭcus, a, um, public.	ĕlĕgantia, ae, f., elegance.
vārius, a, um, various, different.	tūtōr, ārĭ, ātus, dep., to defend.
mōs, mōris, m., custom, manner.	prōtĕgo, ěre, xĭ, otum, to protect.
expōno, ěre, pōsuĭ, pōsitum, to set forth, explain.	
ulciscor, ĭ, ultus, dep., to avenge, revenge.	
opprĭmo, ěre, pressĭ, pressum, to overcome, overpower.	

## I. Translate into English :

1. Nōs in Graecōrum virtūtĭbus<sup>1</sup> expōnendĭs mōrēs eōrum<sup>2</sup> sĕcūtĭ sūmus. 2. Eō tempōre Miltiādes aeger ěrat vulnĕrĭbus, quae in oppugnandō oppĭdō accĕpĕrat. 3. Ōrestes patris<sup>3</sup> ulciscendĭ causā mātrem et Aegisthum occĭdit. 4. Ĕlĕphantōrum<sup>4</sup> trājĭciendōrum vāria consĭlia fuĕrunt. 5. Omnis lōquendĭ<sup>5</sup> ĕlĕgantia augĕtur lĕgendĭs ōrātōrĭbus<sup>6</sup> et pōētĭs.<sup>6</sup> 6. Neuter suĭ prōtĕgendĭ corpōris<sup>7</sup> mēmōr ěrat. 7. Cāto missus est ad<sup>8</sup> collĭgendam Ptolĕmaei rĕgis pĕcūniam. 8. Caesar lĕgem tūlit<sup>9</sup> dē<sup>10</sup> dīvĭdendō agrō publĭcō. 9. Ad<sup>11</sup> pĭrātās opprĭmendōs missus est Pompĕius. 10. Dĭcit sē<sup>12</sup> nōn hostĭlĭ ānĭmō,<sup>13</sup> sed ob regnum tūtandum arma cĕpisse.<sup>13</sup>

Notes.—1. Governed by in. 2. Eōrum, of them = their. 3. Limits causā. 4. Limits consĭlia. 5. A gerund. 6. See 66. 7. See 62. 8. What does ad with the gerundive express? See Note 2. 9. Tūlit, proposed. 10. Dē = in regard to. 11. See Note 2. 12. See 84. 13. See 66.

## VOCABULARY.

vexo, āre, āvĭ, ātum, to harass.	aedĭfĭco, āre, āvĭ, ātum, to build.
Graecia, ae, f., Greece.	āsylum, ĭ, n., an asylum.
āpĕrio, ĩre, uĭ, tum, to open.	vālētūdo, ĩnis, f., health.
dĕlĭgo, ěre, lĕgĭ, lectum, to select.	excĭto, āre, āvĭ, ātum, to excite.
tūōr, ērĭ, ĭtus, dep., to guard.	mātĕria, ae, f., matter; pretext.

## II. Translate into Latin (using the gerundive) :

1. Brutus was slain in<sup>1</sup> liberating (his) country. 2. Many

states were giving money for<sup>3</sup> building ships (*or*, to build ships). 3. Miltiades urged the guards of the bridge (that they should not let go =) not<sup>3</sup> to let go the opportunity<sup>4</sup> of liberating Greece. 4. *When<sup>5</sup> Troy had been destroyed*, Aenēas fled-forth in ships,<sup>6</sup> that he might seek<sup>7</sup> (= to seek) a place (of =) for founding a city. 5. How-great care and<sup>8</sup> diligence I have employed<sup>9</sup> at this time in<sup>1</sup> guarding my health, I have you (as) witnesses. 6. Romulus opened an asylum for-the-purpose<sup>10</sup> of increasing<sup>11</sup> the multitude. 7. Short is the hour for<sup>2</sup> bringing help.<sup>12</sup> 8. Caesar proceeded to<sup>2</sup> harass the enemy (*plural*). 9. He was seeking<sup>7</sup> a pretext (of =) for exciting war. 10. To<sup>2</sup> accomplish (= for accomplishing) these things Orgetorix is selected.

Notes.—1. Think of, *in (his) country to be liberated*; etc. 2. See Note 2. 3. See 89. 4. Use *occāsio*. 5. The italics indicate ablat. absolute. 6. See 66. 7. Use *quaero*. 8. Use *que*. 9. See 92. 10. Where does *causā* stand? 11. Use *augeo*. 12. Use *ops*.

## THE SUPINES.

100. The accusative supine, after verbs expressing or implying motion, denotes purpose :

*As, lūsum it, he goes to play; lēgātōs mīserunt questum, they sent ambassadors to complain.*

1. The ablative supine limits adjectives meaning good or evil, easy or difficult, pleasant or unpleasant, fit or unfit :

*As, nēfās vīsū, impious to behold; turpe dictū, shameful to say.*

## VOCABULARY.

*cōtērus*, a, um, the other, the rest.  
*tam*, *adv.*, so, so much.  
*ēmitto*, *ēre*, *īsī*, *issum*, to send out.  
*mānus*, *ūs*, *f.*, a force, band.  
*ēques*, *ītis*, *m.*, a horseman.  
*foedus*, a, um, detestable.

*Clōdīus*, *ī*, *m.*, Clodius.  
*tam*—*quam*, so—as.  
*mīrābīlis*, *e*, wonderful.  
*sālūto*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, to salute.  
*ēquītēs*, *plur.*, cavalry, horsemen.  
*utrum*—*an*, whether—or.

num, in indirect questions, whether.

intellīgo, ěre, lexī, lectum, to understand.

spĕcŭlor, āri, ātus, dep., to observe, spy out.

I. Translate into English :

1. Pīso servum ěmīsīt spectātum num Clōdīus vēnīret.<sup>1</sup>
2. Nōn vīdī eōs, quōs tū ad mē sālūtātum mīsērās. 3. Magnā mǎnū<sup>2</sup> castra oppugnātum vēnērunt. 4. Hannībal ěquītēs quingentōs ad castra Rōmāna mīsĕrat spĕcŭlātum, ŭbi cōpiae essent.<sup>1</sup> 5. Quid est tam jūcundum audītū, quam sǎpientībus sententiīs<sup>2</sup> ornāta ōrātiō? 6. Mīrābīle dictū. 7. Diffīcīle ěrat intellectū, utrum Attīcum āmicī mǎgis vērĕrentur<sup>1</sup> an āmārent.<sup>1</sup> 8. Cĕtĕra<sup>3</sup> vīsū quam dictū foediōra fuĕrunt.

Notes.—1. See 92. 2. See 66. 3. Cĕtĕra, neut. plur., — the other things, or, the rest.

VOCABULARY.

terrībīlis, e, terrible.

Pharnābāzus, ī, m., Pharnabazus.

extrā, prep. with acc., beyond.

hābīto, āre, āvī, ātum, to reside.

concĕdo, ěre, cessī, cessum, to retire.

explōro, āre, āvī, ātum, to examine, ascertain.

II. Translate into Latin (using the supine in um) :

1. The king sent Pharnabazus to examine. 2. Miltiades retired to Argos<sup>1</sup> to reside. 3. They come to look. 4. The maiden had gone beyond the (fortified) walls to seek<sup>2</sup> water.

(In the following use the supine in u) :

5. This (neut.) is easy to do. 6. Thus<sup>3</sup> it is necessary<sup>4</sup> to say. 7. Nothing is easier to know.<sup>5</sup> 8. There were forms terrible to see.

Notes.—1. See 82, 3. 2. Use pĕto. 3. Ita. 4. Ōpus. 5. Use scio.



## ABBREVIATIONS.



<i>adj.</i>	= adjective.
<i>adv.</i>	= adverb.
<i>comp.</i>	= comparative.
<i>conj.</i>	= conjunction.
<i>half dep.</i>	= half deponent or semi-deponent.
<i>intr.</i>	= intransitive.
<i>intr. dep.</i>	= intransitive deponent.
<i>super.</i>	= superlative.
<i>tr.</i>	= transitive.
<i>tr. dep.</i>	= transitive deponent.

Other abbreviations need no explanation.





# LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.



## A.

- ā**, **ab**, or **abs**, *prep. with ablat.*, from; by; on, at, in.
- ab-dūco**, **ēre**, **uxī**, **uctum**, *tr.*, to lead away, take away.
- āb-ēram**, **abfuī**. See **ab-sum**.
- ab-jicio**, **ēre**, **jēcī**, **jectum**, *tr.*, to throw away, cast aside.
- ab-solvo**, **ēre**, **solvī**, **sōlūtum**, *tr.*, to release, acquit.
- abs-tīneo**, **ēre**, **tīnuī**, **tentum**, *tr.*, to abstain, restrain.
- ab-sum**, **esse**, **fuī**, —, *irr. intr.*, to be absent, distant, or away.
- ac**, *conj.*, and; in comparisons, than, as.
- ac-cīdo**, **ēre**, **cīdī**, —, *intr.* (ad + cādo), to happen, occur.
- ac-cīpio**, **ēre**, **cēpī**, **ceptum**, *tr.* (ad + cāpio), to receive.
- ac-cūso**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *tr.* (ad + causa), to accuse.
- ācer**, **cris**, **ore**, *adj.*, sharp; severe.
- Āchilles**, *is*, *m.*, Achilles, a distinguished hero at the Trojan war.
- āciēs**, **ēī**, *f.*, battle-array; line of battle.
- actus**, *a*, *um*. See **āgo**.
- ad**, *prep. with the accus.*, to, towards, for.
- ādēram**. See **ad-sum**.
- ad-hībeo**, **ēre**, **uī**, **ītum**, *tr.* (ad + hābeo), to employ, apply.
- ādītus**, **ūs**, *m.*, approach, access.
- adjūmentum**, **ī**, *n.*, help, aid.
- ad-jūvo**, **āre**, **jūvi**, **jūtum**, *tr.*, to help, aid, assist.
- ad-mōneo**, **ēre**, **uī**, **ītum**, *tr.*, to admonish, remind.
- ad-scribo**, **ere**, **ipsī**, **iptum**, *tr.*, to enroll.
- ad-sum**, **esse**, **fuī**, —, *irr. intr.*, to be present.
- ādūlescens**, **entis**, *m. and f.*, a youth, young man or woman.
- ad-vēnio**, **īre**, **vēnī**, **ventum**, *intr.*, to come to, to arrive.
- adventus**, **ūs**, *m.*, arrival.
- aedīfīco**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *tr.* (aedis + fācio), to build.
- aedis**, *is*, *f.*, a temple; *plural*, **ae-dēs**, a house; temples.
- aeger**, **gra**, **grum**, *adj.*, sick.
- Aegisthus**, **ī**, *m.*, Aegisthus, who murdered Agamemnon.
- aemūlor**, **ārī**, **ātus**, *tr. dep.*, to emulate.

**Aenēas**, ae, *m.*, Aeneas, son of Venus and Anchises, and the hero of Virgil's Aeneid.

**aestās**, ātis, *f.*, summer.

**aestus**, ūs, *m.*, heat; the tide.

**aevum**, ī, *n.*, age; life.

**Africa**, ae, *f.*, Africa.

**Āgāmēmon**, ōnis, *m.*, Agamemnon, king of Mycēnae, and commander of the Greeks at the siege of Troy.

**āger**, grī, *m.*, a field; land.

**Āgēsīlāus**, ī, *m.*, king of Sparta.

**ag-nosco**, ōre, nōvī, nītum, *tr.* (ad + nosco), to recognize.

**āgo**, ōre, ēgī, actum, *tr.*, to do, perform, act.

**ālācer**, cris, ore, *adj.*, eager, lively.

**ālacrītās**, ātis, *f.*, liveliness, enthusiasm.

**Alēmēna**, ae, *f.*, mother of Hercules by Jupiter.

**Ālexander**, drī, *m.*, son of Philip, king of Macedon.

**ālīquis**, qua, quid, *indef. pron.*, some one, some.

**ālīter**, *adv.*, otherwise.

**ālius**, a, ud, *gen. ālīus, adj.*, other, another.

**alter**, ěra, ěrum, *gen. altĕrīus, adj.*, the other of two, one, another.

**altītūdo**, īnis, *f.*, height, depth.

**altus**, a, um, *adj.*, high; deep.

**āmāns**, antis, *adj.*, fond, loving.

**ambītus**, ūs, *m.*, bribery.

**ambūlo**, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to walk.

**āmīcītia**, ae, *f.*, friendship.

**āmīcus**, a, um, *adj.*, friendly.

**āmīcus**, ī, *m.*, a friend.

**ā-mitto**, ōre, īsī, issum, *tr.*, to lose.

**āmo**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to love.

**amplius**, *comp. adv.*, more, longer.

**an**, *conj.*, or. It introduces the second member of an alternative question.

**Antōna**, ae, *f.*, an ancient town in Italy.

**Ancus**, ī, *m.*, the fourth king of Rome.

**Andrōclūs**, ī, *m.*, Androclus or Androcles, the name of a slave.

**ānīmal**, ālis, *n.*, an animal.

**ānīmus**, ī, *m.*, the mind; courage.

**annus**, ī, *m.*, a year.

**ante**, *prep. with accus.*, before.

**ante**, *adv.*, before, previously.

**Antōnius**, ī, *m.*, Antony, the triumvir, enemy of Cicero.

**āpĕrio**, ĩre, uī, pertum, *tr.*, to open.

**Āpollo**, īnis, *m.*, son of Jupiter and Latōna, and god of prophecy, music, archery, poetry, and medicine.

**Āpollōnius**, ī, *m.*, Apollonius.

**appello**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to call.

**ap-prōpinquo**, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to approach.

**āpud**, *prep. with accus.*, among, with, near, at, by.

**āqua**, ae, *f.*, water.

**āquīla**, ae, *f.*, an eagle.

**arbor**, ōris, *f.*, a tree.

**arceō**. See *arx*.

**arceo**, ěre, uī, —, *tr.*, to keep off, drive off.

**Ārĕthūsa**, ae, *f.*, a famous fountain near Syracuse.

**argentum**, ī, *n.*, silver.



**Argī, ōrum, m. pl.**, Argos, the capital of Argolis in Greece.

**Argonautae, ārum, m. pl.**, the Argonauts or Greek heroes who sailed in quest of the golden fleece.

**Ariovistus, ī, m.**, a king of the Germans in the time of Caesar.

**arma, ōrum, n. pl.**, arms, weapons.

**āro, āre, āvī, ātum, tr.**, to plough.

**Arpīnum, ī, n.**, a town in Italy, the birthplace of Cicero.

**ars, artis, f.**, art, skill.

**arx, arcis, f.**, a citadel, fortress.

**as, assis, m.**, a copper.

**Ascānius, ī, m.**, son of Aenēas.

**Āsia, ae, f.**, Asia.

**āsylum, ī, n.**, an asylum.

**Āthēnae, ārum, f. pl.**, Athens.

**Āthēniensis, is, m.**, an Athenian.

**atque, conj.**, and.

**atrāmentum, ī, n.**, ink.

**Atticus, ī, m.**, a surname of Titus Pomponius, given to him on account of his long residence in Athens.

**at-tribuo, ōre, uī, ūtum, tr.**, to assign.

**auctoritās, ātis, f.**, influence, authority.

**audax, ācis, adj.**, bold, daring.

**audeo, ēre, ausus, half dep.**, to dare, venture.

**audio, īre, īvī, ītum, tr.**, to hear, listen to.

**augeo, ēre, auxī, auctum, tr.**, to increase, enlarge.

**Augustus, ī, m.**, the first emperor of Rome.

**aurēus, a, um, adj.**, golden.

**aurum, ī, n.**, gold.

**ausus, a, um. See audeo.**

**autem, conj.**, but.

**auxī. See augeo.**

**auxilium, ī, n.**, aid, assistance; *plural, auxilia, auxiliaries, auxiliary troops.*

**āvāritia, ae, f.**, avarice.

**āvīdus, a, um, adj.**, eager, greedy.

**avis, is, f.**, a bird.

**āvus, ī, m.**, a grandfather.

## B.

**beātus, a, um, adj.**, happy.

**Belgae, ārum, m. pl.**, the Belgians, a people of Gaul.

**bellum, ī, n.**, war. *Gen. bellī — at war, in war.*

**bōnum, ī, n.**, good, advantage.

**bōnus, a, um, adj.**, good.

**bōrēas, ae, m.**, the north wind.

**bōs, bōvis, m. or f.**, an ox or cow.

**brēvis, e, adj.**, short.

**Brundisium, ī, n.**, a city in Italy.

**Brūtus, ī, m.**, one of the leaders in the conspiracy against Caesar.

## C.

**cādo, ēre, cēcīdī, cāsum, intr.**, to fall.

**caecus, a, um, adj.**, blind.

**caedes, is, f.**, slaughter.

**caedo, ēre, cēcīdī, caesum, tr.**, to cut down, kill, slay.

**Caesar, āris, m.**, Caesar.

**calvus, a, um, adj.**, bald.

**Cāninius, ī, m.**, Caninius, who was consul for only a few hours.

**canto, āre, āvī, ātum, tr.**, to sing.

**cantus, ūs, m.**, a song, singing.

**cāpio, ēre, cēpī, captum, tr.**, to take, receive.

capto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to catch.  
 cāput, ītis, *n.*, the head.  
 Carthāgo, ītis, *f.*, Carthage.  
 Cārus, a, um, *adj.*, dear.  
 castellum, ī, *n.*, a fort, fortress.  
 Castīcus, ī, *m.*, a Sequanian.  
 castra, ōrum, *n. pl.*, a camp.  
 Cātīlīna, ae, *m.*, a Roman notorious for his conspiracy against his country.  
 Cāto, ōnis, *m.*, M. Porcius Cato the censor; another of the same name who committed suicide.  
 causa, ae, *f.*, a cause, reason; *causa*, *ablat.*, on account of, for the purpose of. *It follows the genitive governed by it.*  
 cēcīdī. *See cādo.*  
 cēcīdī. *See caedo.*  
 cēlēbro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to celebrate.  
 cēler, ēris, ēre, *adj.*, quick, swift.  
 cēlēritās, ātis, *f.*, celerity, speed.  
 cēlo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to conceal.  
 cēna, ae, *f.*, dinner.  
 cēno, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to dine.  
 certus, a, um, *adj.*, certain, fixed.  
 cervix, īcis, *f.*, the neck.  
 cētērus, a, um, *adj.*, the other, the rest.  
 charta, ae, *f.*, paper.  
 Cīcēro, ōnis, *m.*, Marcus Tullius the orator, and Quintus, his brother.  
 cīvīlis, e, *adj.*, civil.  
 cīvīs, is, *m. and f.*, a citizen, countryman.  
 cīvītās, ātis, *f.*, a state.  
 clārus, a, um, *adj.*, bright, clear.  
 classis, is, *f.*, a fleet.  
 claudo, ēre, clausī, clausum, *tr.*, to shut; to inclose.

claudus, a, um, *adj.*, lame.  
 clāvis, is, *f.*, a key.  
 Clōdīus, ī, *m.*, a turbulent Roman, enemy of Cicero.  
 coetus, ūs, *m.*, an assembly.  
 cog-nosco, ēre, nōvī, nītum, *tr.* (con + nosco), to know, learn, ascertain.  
 cohors, tis, *f.*, a cohort, the tenth part of a legion.  
 col-līgo, ēre, lēgī, lectum, *tr.* (con + lēgo), to collect.  
 collis, is, *m.*, a hill.  
 col-lōco, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to place, station, settle.  
 col-lōquor, ī, cūtus, *intr.*, to converse, confer.  
 cōlo, ēre, uī, cultum, *tr.*, to cultivate, practise.  
 cōmes, ītis, *m. and f.*, a companion.  
 com-pleo, ēre, ēvī, ētum, *tr.*, to fill.  
 con-cēdo, ēre, cessī, cessum, *intr.*, to retire, withdraw.  
 concordia, ae, *f.*, concord, union.  
 con-demno, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to condemn.  
 condīcio, ōnis, *f.*, condition, terms.  
 con-do, ēre, dīdī, dītum, *tr.*, to found.  
 con-fēro, ferre, tūlī, collātum, *irr. tr.*, to bring together, collect.  
 con-fīcio, ēre, fēcī, lectum, *tr.* (con + fācio), to accomplish, perform.  
 conjunx, jūgis, *m. and f.*, a husband or wife.  
 conjūrātio, ōnis, *f.*, a conspiracy.  
 Cōnon, ōnis, *m.*, an Athenian commander.  
 cōnor, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to try, attempt, endeavor.

**consīdĕro**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to consider.  
**consīlium**, ī, *n.*, design, plan; counsel; a council.  
**con-suesco**, ĕre, suēvī, suētum, *intr.*, to be accustomed.  
**consul**, ūlis, *m.*, a consul.  
**consŭlātus**, ūs, *m.*, the consulship.  
**consŭlo**, ĕre, uī, tum, *tr.*, to consult.  
**con-tendo**, ĕre, dī, tentum, *intr.*, to strive; to hurry on.  
**contrā**, *prep. with accus.*, against, contrary to.  
**contŭlī**. See **confĕro**.  
**cōpia**, ae, *f.*, plenty, abundance; *plural*, cōpiae, forces, troops.  
**cor**, cordis, *n.*, the heart.  
**Cōrinthus**, ī, *f.*, Corinth.  
**cornū**, ūs, *n.*, a horn.  
**corpus**, ōris, *n.*, a body.  
**corvus**, ī, *m.*, a raven.  
**creo**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to make, choose, appoint.  
**cresco**, ĕre, crēvī, crētum, *intr.*, to grow, increase.  
**crēvī**. See **cresco**.  
**crīmen**, īnis, *n.*, a charge, crime.  
**Crōton**, ōnis, *m. and f.*, Croton or Crotōna, a town in Italy.  
**crŭciātus**, ūs, *m.*, torture, torment.  
**crŭdĕlis**, e, *adj.*, cruel.  
**culpa**, ae, *f.*, fault, blame.  
**cum**, *prep. with ablat.*, with.  
**cum**, *adv.*, when, while.  
**cum**, *conj.*, as, since, because; although.  
**cunctus**, a, um, *adj.*, all, the whole, entire.  
**cŭpīdus**, a, um, *adj.*, desirous, eager, fond.  
**cūr**, *adv.*, why.

**cūra**, ae, *f.*, care.  
**cūro**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to take care, care for.  
**currus**, ūs, *m.*, a chariot.  
**custōdio**, ĭre, īvī, ĭtum, *tr.*, to guard.  
**custōs**, ōdis, *m. and f.*, a guard.  
**Cyclādes**, um, *f. pl.*, the Cyclades, in the Mediterranean sea.  
**Cyprus**, ī, *f.*, an island in the Mediterranean sea.

## D.

**damnātio**, ōnis, *f.*, condemnation.  
**damno**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to condemn.  
**Dārīus**, ī, *m.*, a king of Persia.  
**dātus**, a, um. See **do**.  
**dē**, *prep. with the ablat.*, of, from, out of; about, in regard to, concerning.  
**dea**, ae, *f.*, a goddess.  
**dēbeo**, ĕre, uī, ĭtum, *tr.* (de + hābeo), to owe; I ought.  
**dē-cerno**, ĕre, crēvī, crētum, *tr.*, to decree.  
**dēcrēvī**. See **dēcerno**.  
**dē-dēus**, ōris, *n.*, disgrace.  
**dēdī**. See **do**.  
**dēdīdī**. See **dēdo**.  
**dē-do**, ĕre, dēdīdī, dēdītum, *tr.*, to give up, surrender.  
**dē-ēram**, de-esse. See **dēsum**.  
**dē-fendo**, ĕre, dī, sum, *tr.*, to defend.  
**dēfensor**, ōris, *m.*, a defender.  
**dē-fuī**. See **dēsum**.  
**dē-hortor**, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to dissuade.  
**dēlecto**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to delight.

dēleo, ēre, ēvī, ētum, *tr.*, to destroy.  
dē-līgo, ēre, lēgī, lectum, *tr.*, to  
select, choose.

Delphī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, the famous  
city of the oracle of Apollo in  
Phocis.

Dēlus, ī, *f.*, one of the Cyclades.

dens, dentis, *m.*, a tooth.

dē-silio, īre, luī, sultum, *intr.*, to  
leap down.

dē-sum, esse, fuī, —, *irr. intr.*, to  
be wanting, to fail.

dē-tēgo, ēre, texī, tectum, *tr.*, to  
uncover, detect.

dētērior, us, *comp. adj.*, worse.

dēus, ī, *m.*, a god; God.

dīco, ēre, dixī, dictum, *tr.*, to say,  
speak; to call.

dīdici. *See disco.*

dies, eī, *m. and f.*, a day.

dis-fēro, ferre, distūlī, dilātum,  
*tr.*, to differ.

dis-ficilis, e, *adj.*, difficult.

dignitās, ātis, *f.*, dignity.

dignus, a, um, *adj.*, worthy.

diligens, entis, *adj.*, diligent.

diligentia, ae, *f.*, diligence.

dī-mitto, ēre, mīsi, missum, *tr.*,  
to let go, dismiss.

Diōgēnes, is, *m.*, a well known  
Cynic philosopher.

dī-ruo, ēre, uī, ūtum, *tr.*, to de-  
molish, destroy.

dīs, dītis, *adj.*, rich.

dis-cēdo, ēre, cessī, cessum, *intr.*,  
to withdraw, depart.

disco, ēre, didici, —, *tr.*, to learn.

discrimen, inis, *n.*, danger, peril.

dis-similis, e, *adj.*, unlike.

dis-tribuo, ēre, uī, ūtum, *tr.*, to  
distribute.

dītissimus, a, um. *See dīs.*

diū, *adv.*, long, for a long time.

*Comp. diūtius.*

dīves, ītis, *adj.*, rich.

Divīco, ōnis, *m.*, a Gallic chief.

dīvīdo, ēre, īsi, īsum, *tr.*, to di-  
vide.

dīvīnus, a, um, *adj.*, divine.

do, dare, dēdī, dātum, *tr.*, to give.

dōceo, ēre, uī, ctum, *tr.*, to teach,  
show.

doctus, a, um, *adj.*, learned.

dōlor, ōris, *m.*, grief, pain.

dōlus, ī, *m.*, deceit, artifice.

dōmīnus, ī, *m.*, a lord, master.

dōmus, ūs, *f.*, a house, home; dō-  
mī, at home; dōmum, home,  
homeward; dōmō, from home.

dōnum, ī, *n.*, a gift.

dormio, īre, īvi, ītum, *intr.*, to  
sleep.

drāco, ōnis, *m.*, a serpent, dragon.

dūbius, a, um, *adj.*, doubtful.

dūco, ēre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to lead; to  
prolong.

dulcis, e, *adj.*, sweet, fresh.

Dumnōrix, īgis, *m.*, a Gallic chief.

dūrus, a, um, *adj.*, hard.

dux, dūcis, *m. and f.*, a leader, gen-  
eral, guide.

## E.

ē or ex, *prep. with ablat.*, from, of,  
out of, on account of.

ēdax, ācis, *adj.*, devouring, a de-  
vourer.

ē-dūco, ēre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to lead  
out or forth.

ef-ficio, ēre, fecī, fectum, *tr.*, to  
effect.

ēgī. *See āgo.*

ēgo, meī, *pers. pron.*, I; ēgo ipse,  
I myself.

**ē-grēdior**, ī, *grossus*, *intr. dep.*, to go out, depart.  
**ē-jicio**, ēre, jēcī, *jectum*, *tr.*, to throw out, expel, banish.  
**ēlēgantia**, ae, *f.*, elegance.  
**ēlémentum**, ī, *n.*, an element, first principle.  
**ēlēphantus**, ī, *m.*, an elephant.  
**ēlōquentia**, ae, *f.*, eloquence.  
**ēmax**, ācis, *adj.*, fond of buying.  
**ē-mitto**, ēre, īsī, *issum*, *tr.*, to send out.  
**ēmo**, ēre, ēmī, *emptum*, *tr.*, to buy, purchase.  
**Ennius**, ī, *m.*, the father of Roman epic poetry.  
**ēo**, īre, īvī, *ītum*, *intr.*, to go.  
**ēphēsus**, ī, *f.*, a city in Ionia.  
**ēpistōla**, ae, *f.*, a letter, epistle.  
**ēques**, ītis, *m.*, a horseman; *plur.* **ēquītēs**, cavalry, horsemen.  
**ēquītātus**, ūs, *m.*, cavalry.  
**ēquīto**, āre, āvī, *ātum*, *intr.*, to ride.  
**ēquus**, ī, *m.*, a horse.  
**ē-rīpio**, ēre, rīpūī, *reptum*, *tr.*, to rescue, wrest.  
**erro**, āre, āvī, *ātum*, *intr.*, to wander; to err.  
**error**, ōris, *m.*, error, mistake.  
**et**, *conj.*, and; even, also; et—et, both—and.  
**Eurystheus**, ī, *m.*, a king of Mycenae, who imposed on Hercules his famous twelve labors.  
**ē-vādo**, ēre, āsī, *āsum*, *tr. and intr.*, to escape.  
**ex**, *prep. with ablat.*, from, of, out of, on account of.  
**excelsus**, a, um, *adj.*, high, tall.  
**ex-ēito**, āre, āvī, *ātum*, *tr.*, to excite.

**exerōitus**, ūs, *m.*, an army.  
**exīguus**, a, um, *adj.*, little, small.  
**exītium**, ī, *n.*, destruction.  
**ex-pēto**, ēre, īvī, *ītum*, *tr.*, to seek for.  
**ex-pio**, āre, āvī, *ātum*, *tr.*, to expiate.  
**ex-plōro**, āre, āvī, *ātum*, *tr.*, to examine, ascertain.  
**ex-pōno**, ēre, pōsūī, *pōsitum*, *tr.*, to set forth, explain.  
**exsīlium**, ī, *n.*, exile.  
**ex-specto**, āre, āvī, *ātum*, *tr. and intr.*, to await, expect.  
**extrā**, *prep. with accus.*, beyond.

## F.

**fāber**, brī, *m.*, an artisan, workman.  
**fāciēs**, ēī, *f.*, face, appearance.  
**fācīlis**, e, *adj.*, easy.  
**fācīlītās**, ātis, *f.*, affability.  
**fācīnus**, ōris, *n.*, a crime.  
**fācio**, ēre, fēcī, *factum*, *tr.*, to do, make. *The passive is fīo.*  
**fācūltās**, ātis, *f.*, means; opportunity.  
**fāma**, ae, *f.*, report, rumor, fame.  
**fās**, *indeclin. n. adj.*, right, lawful.  
**fātum**, ī, *n.*, fate.  
**fauces**, ium, *f. pl.*, the throat, jaws.  
**fāveo**, ēre, fāvī, *fautum*, *intr.*, to favor.  
**fēcī**. See **fācio**.  
**fēlix**, īcis, *adj.*, happy.  
**fēra**, ae, *f.*, a wild beast.  
**fērio**, īre, —, *tr.*, to strike.  
**fēro**, ferre, tūlī, *lātum*, *irr. tr.*, to bear, bring, carry; to propose (*a law*).  
**fērus**, a, um, *adj.*, wild, savage.  
**fīdes**, ēī, *f.*, faith, fidelity; pledge.

**fīdūcia**, ae, *f.*, confidence, assurance.

**fīlia**, ae, *f.*, a daughter.

**fīlius**, ī, *m.*, a son.

**fīnio**, īre, īvī, ītum, *tr.*, to end.

**fīnis**, is, *m.*, an end, limit, boundary; *plur.*, **fīnēs**, territory.

**fīo**, fīrī, factus, to be done, to be made; to happen. *It is the passive of fācio.*

**fīrmus**, a, um, *adj.*, strong, firm.

**fīagīto**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to demand.

**fleo**, ēre, ēvī, ētum, *tr. and intr.*, to weep; weep over.

**flos**, flōris, *m.*, a flower.

**fluctus**, ūs, *m.*, a wave.

**flūmen**, īnis, *n.*, a river.

**fluo**, ēre, xī, xum, *intr.*, to flow.

**foedus**, a, um, *adj.*, detestable.

**fons**, fontis, *m.*, a fountain, spring.

**fōras**, *adv.*, out, out of doors.

**fōre** = fūtūrus esse.

**fōrem** = essem.

**forma**, ae, *f.*, form; beauty.

**fortis**, e, *adj.*, brave, strong.

**fortīter**, *adv.*, bravely.

**fortūna**, ae, *f.*, fortune.

**fortūnātus**, a, um, *adj.*, fortunate.

**frāter**, tris, *m.*, a brother.

**frēquenter**, *adv.*, frequently.

**frūmentum**, ī, *n.*, corn, grain.

**fūgio**, ēre, fūgī, fūgītum, *tr. and intr.*, to flee, escape.

**fulgur**, ūris, *n.*, lightning.

**fundo**, ēre, fūdī, fūsum, *tr.*, to pour, shed.

**fūro**, ēre, uī, —, *intr.*, to be mad.

**furtum**, ī, *n.*, theft.

## G.

**Galba**, ae, *m.*, a Roman general.

**Gallia**, ae, *f.*, Gaul.

**Gallus**, ī, *m.*, a Gaul.

**gaudeo**, ēre, gāvīsus, *intr. half dep.*, to rejoice.

**gēmīnī**, ōrum, *m. pl.*, twins.

**gēner**, ōrī, *m.*, a son-in-law.

**Gēnēva**, ae, *f.*, Geneva.

**gens**, tis, *f.*, a race, nation.

**gēnu**, ūs, *n.*, the knee.

**gēnus**, ōris, *n.*, a race, lineage.

**Germānus**, ī, *m.*, a German.

**gēro**, ēre, gessī, gostum, *tr.*, to carry, carry on, wage.

**gigno**, ēre, gēnuī, gēnītum, *tr.*, to beget; to bear.

**glādius**, ī, *m.*, a sword.

**glōria**, ae, *f.*, glory, renown.

**glōrior**, arī, ātus, *dep.*, to boast.

**grācīlis**, e, *adj.*, slender.

**grādus**, ūs, *m.*, a step; degree.

**Gracō**, *adv.*, in Greek, Greek.

**Gracīa**, ae, *f.*, Greece.

**Gracius**, a, um, *adj.*, Greek.

**Gracius**, ī, *m.*, a Greek.

**grandis**, e, *adj.*, large, great.

**grando**, īnis, *f.*, hail.

**grātus**, a, um, *adj.*, pleasing, agreeable; grateful.

**grāvis**, e, *adj.*, heavy.

**grex**, gregis, *m.*, a flock, herd.

## H.

**hābeo**, ēre, uī, ītum, *tr.*, to have.

**hābīto**, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to reside.

**haedus**, ī, *m.*, a kid.

**Hannībal**, ālis, *m.*, a famous general of the Carthaginians.

haurio, ĩre, hausĭ, haustum, *tr.*,  
to draw.

Hector, ōris, *m.*, a famous Trojan  
warrior.

Hēlēna, ae, *f.*, Helen, wife of Mene-  
lāus.

Helvētius, ĩ, *m.*, a Helvetian.

herba, ae, *f.*, grass; herb.

Hereŭles, is, *m.*, Hercules.

hŕus, ĩ, *m.*, a master of slaves.

Hespērides, um, *f. pl.*, the Hespē-  
rides, daughter of Hespērus.

hīc, haec, hŏc, *demons. adj. pron.*,  
this, this one; *also pers. pron.*,  
he, she, it.

hiemo, āre, āvĭ, ātum, *intr.*, to  
winter.

hiems, ěmis, *f.*, winter.

hīlāris, e, *adj.*, cheerful, merry.

histōria, ae, *f.*, history.

Hŏmērus, ĩ, *m.*, Homer.

hŏmo, ĩnis, *m.*, man, a man.

hŏnor, ōris, *m.*, honor.

hŏra, ae, *f.*, an hour.

hortor, ārĭ, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to urge,  
exhort.

hortus, ĩ, *m.*, a garden.

hostĭlis, e, *adj.*, hostile.

hostis, is, *m. and f.*, an enemy;  
*the plural, hostēs, is commonly*  
*used for the enemy.*

hūmānus, a, um, *adj.*, human.

hūmĭlis, e, *adj.*, low.

# I.

ĭbi, *adv.*, there.

ĭdem, eādem, ĭdem, *demons. adj.*  
*pron.*, the same.

ĭdŏnēus, a, um, *adj.*, suitable.

ignārus, a, um, *adj.*, ignorant.

ignis, is, *m.*, fire.

ille, illa, illud, *demons. adj. pron.*,  
that, that one; *also pers. pron.*,  
he, she, it.

imber, bris, *m.*, a shower.

ĭmĭtātio, ōnis, *f.*, imitation.

im-mēmōr, ōris, *adj.*, unmindful.

im-pātĭens, entis, *adj.*, impatient.

impēdĭmentum, ĩ, *n.*, a hindrance;

impēdĭmenta, *n. plur.*, the bag-  
gage of an army.

impēdio, ĩre, ĭvĭ, ĭtum, *tr.*, to hin-  
der.

impērātor, ōris, *m.*, a commander.

impĕrium, ĩ, *n.*, command, power.

impĕro, āre, āvĭ, ātum, *tr.*, to com-  
mand.

impĕtus, ūs, *m.*, an attack.

impiētās, ātis, *f.*, impiety.

im-pŏno, ĕre, pŏsuĭ, pŏsĭtum, *tr.*,  
to put in or on, impose.

in, *prep. with acc.*, into, to, against;  
*with ablat.*, in, on, at.

in-cĭpio, ĕre, cĕpĭ, ceptum, *tr.*, to  
begin, commence.

in-cĭto, āre, āvĭ, ātum, *tr.*, to in-  
cite.

in-crĕdĭbĭlis, e, *adj.*, incredible.

in-dignus, a, um, *adj.*, unworthy.

infans, antis, *m. and f.*, an infant.

in-ŕero, ferre, ĭntŭlĭ, illātum, *irr.*  
*tr.*, to bring in or on; to wage on.

in-finĭtus, a, um, *adj.*, endless,  
boundless.

ingĕnĭum, ĩ, *n.*, genius, talent.

ingens, entis, *adj.*, vast, huge.

in-haereo, ĕre, haesĭ, haesum,  
*intr.*, to stick, to stick in or on.

in-ĭmĭcus, a, um, *adj.*, unfriendly,  
inimical.

ĭnĭtĭum, ĩ, *n.*, a beginning.

in-ĭŕcio, ĕre, ĭŕcĭ, jectum, *tr.*, to  
throw in or on; to infuse.

**injūria**, *ae, f.*, injury, wrong.  
**in-simūlo**, *āre, āvī, ātum, tr.*, to accuse or charge (falsely).  
**in-stītuo**, *ēre, uī, ūtum, tr.*, to rear, train up, instruct.  
**instītūtum**, *ī, n.*, usage, custom.  
**insūla**, *ae, f.*, an island.  
**intel-līgo**, *ēre, lexī, lectum, tr.*, to understand, know.  
**inter**, *prep. with accus.*, between, among.  
**inter-ficio**, *ēre, fecī, fectum, tr.*, to kill, slay.  
**inter-sum**, *esse, fuī, —, irr. intr.*, to be present at.  
**intrō-dūco**, *ēre, xī, ctum, tr.*, to introduce, bring in.  
**īn-ūsītātus**, *a, um, adj.*, unusual.  
**in-vēnio**, *īre, vēnī, ventum, tr.*, to find, discover.  
**in-vīdeo**, *ēre, vīdī, vīsum, intr.*, to envy.  
**in-vōco**, *āre, āvī, ātum, tr.*, to invoke, call upon.  
**ipse**, *ipsa, ipsum, intens. pers. pron.*, self; *tū ipse*, you yourself.  
**is**, *ea, id, demons. adj. pron.*, this, that; *also pers. pron.*, he, she, it.  
**Isōcrātes**, *is, m.*, Isocrates, an Athenian orator.  
**Itālia**, *ae, f.*, Italy.  
**īter**, *ītinēris, n.*, a journey; a road; **īter facere** = to march.

## J.

**jaceo**, *ēre, uī, ītum, intr.*, to lie.  
**jacio**, *ēre, jēcī, jactum, tr.*, to throw.  
**jānuā**, *ae, f.*, a door.  
**Jānus**, *ī, m.*, an Italian deity; the

doors of his temple were shut in time of peace and open in time of war.

**Jōvis**. See **Jūpīter**.

**jūbeo**, *ēre, jussī, jussum, tr.*, to order.

**jūcundus**, *a, um, adj.*, delightful.

**jūdex**, *īcis, m.*, a judge.

**jūgum**, *ī, n.*, a yoke.

**Jūgurtha**, *ae, m.*, a king of Numidia.

**Jūgurthīnus**, *a, um, adj.*, Jugurthine.

**Jūno**, *ōnis, f.*, sister and wife of Jupiter.

**Jūpīter**, *Jōvis, m.*, the chief god of the Romans.

**jūs**, *jūris, n.*, right, justice, law.

**jūsjūrandum**, *jūrisjūrandī, n.*, an oath.

**justītia**, *ae, f.*, justice.

**justus**, *a, um, adj.*, just.

**jūvēnis**, *is, m. and f.*, a youth.

**jūvo**, *āre, jūvī, jūtūm, tr.*, to help, aid, assist.

## L.

**Lābiēnus**, *ī, m.*, a Roman general.

**lābor**, *ōris, m.*, labor.

**Lācēdaemon**, *ōnis, f.*, Lacedaemon or Sparta.

**Lācēdaemōnius**, *i, m.*, a Lacedaemonian.

**lacrīma**, *ae, f.*, a tear.

**lāna**, *ae, f.*, wool.

**lāpis**, *īdis, m.*, a stone.

**Lātīnō**, *adv.*, in Latin, Latin.

**Lātōna**, *ae, f.*, mother of Apollo and Diana.

**lātus**, *a, um, adj.*, broad, wide.

**laudo**, *āre, āvī, ātum, tr.*, to praise.



laus, laudis, *f.*, praise.

Lāvīnium, *i, n.*, a city in Italy.

lāvo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to wash.

lēgātūs, *i, m.*, an ambassador; a lieutenant.

lēgio, ōnis, *f.*, a legion.

lēgo, ěre, lēgī, lectum, *tr.*, to read.

Lemnus, *i, f.*, an island in the Aegæan sea.

leo, ōnis, *m.*, a lion.

Leōnīdas, *ae, m.*, a king of Sparta.

lēvo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to lighten, relieve.

lex, lēgis, *f.*, a law.

līber, brī, *m.*, a book.

līber, ěra, ěrum, *adj.*, free.

līberālis, *e, adj.*, liberal, generous.

līberālītās, ātis, *f.*, liberality.

lībēri, ōrum, *m. pl.*, children.

lībēro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to free, liberate.

lībērtās, ātis, *f.*, liberty, freedom.

ligneus, *a, um, adj.*, wooden.

lignum, *i, n.*, wood.

Lilybaeum, *i, n.*, a town in Sicily.

lingua, *ae, f.*, a tongue; a language.

littēra, *ae, f.*, a letter of the alphabet; littērae, letters, literature; an epistle, letter.

lītus, ōris, *n.*, the shore.

lōcus, *i, m.*, a place, position; the plural is lōca, *n.*, or lōcī, *m.*

longus, *a, um, adj.*, long.

lōquor, *i, cūtus, dep.*, to speak, say.

lūdus, *i, m.*, play, sport; plur., lūdī, the public games.

lūna, *ae, f.*, the moon.

lūpus, *i, m.*, a wolf.

lux, lūcis, *f.*, light.

Lydus, *i, m.*, a Lydian.

## M.

M. = Marcus.

māgis, *adv.*, more, rather.

māgister, trī, *m.*, a master; teacher.

magnītūdo, īnis, *f.*, greatness, size.

magnus, *a, um, adj.*, great, large.

Comp. mājor; super. maxīmus.

mājor. See magnus.

mājōrēs, *um, m. pl.*, ancestors, forefathers.

mālo, malle, māluī, —, *irr. tr.*, to prefer, choose rather.

mālum, *i, n.*, an apple.

mālum, *i, n.*, evil, ill, misfortune.

mālus, *a, um, adj.*, bad, wicked,

evil. Comp. pējor; super. pes-sīmus.

māneo, ěre, mansī, mansum, *intr.*, to remain.

mānus, ūs, *f.*, a hand; a band, force.

Marcellus, *i, m.*, a Roman consul.

māre, *is, n.*, the sea.

māter, tris, *f.*, a mother.

māteria, *ae, f.*, matter; subject, pretext.

mātūrus, *a, um, adj.*, ripe, mature.

mātūtīnus, *a, um, adj.*, morning.

maxīmus, *a, um.* See magnus.

mel, mellis, *n.*, honey.

mēlior. See bōnus.

mēmor, ōris, *adj.*, mindful.

mēmōria, *ae, f.*, memory.

mēmōro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to recount, relate.

mens, mentis, *f.*, the mind.

mensa, *ae, f.*, a table.

mensis, *is, m.*, a month.

mercātor, ōris, *m.*, a merchant, trader.

mēreo, ēre, uī, ūtum, *tr.*, to merit, deserve.

Messāla, *ae, m.*, a Roman consul.

mētus, ūs, *m.*, fear.

mēus, *a, um, poss. adj. pron.*, my, my own, mine.

migro, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to remove.

mīles, ūtis, *m.*, a soldier.

Mīletus, ī, *f.*, a city in Asia Minor.

mīlia. *See* mille.

mīlītia, *ae, f.*, military service, war; mīlītiaē, *gen.*, on military service.

mille, *num. adj.*, a thousand. *Also used as a noun with plural mīlia, mīlium, mīlībus.*

Miltiādes, *is, m.*, an Athenian general.

Mīnerva, *ae, f.*, the goddess of spinning and weaving, and of war and wisdom.

mīnistro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to furnish, supply.

mīnor. *See* parvus.

mīnus, *adv.*, less.

mīrābīlis, *e, adj.*, wonderful.

mīrīfīcus, *a, um, adj.*, wonderful.

mīror, āri, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to wonder at, admire.

mīrus, *a, um, adj.*, wonderful.

mīser, ēra, ērum, *adj.*, wretched, miserable.

mīserīcordia, *ae, f.*, pity, compassion.

mīsi. *See* mitto.

mītis, *e, adj.*, mild, mellow.

mitto, ēre, mīsi, missum, *tr.*, to send.

mōdestus, *a, um, adj.*, modest.

moenia, ūm, *n. pl.*, defensive walls, city walls.

mollis, *e., adj.*, soft.

mōneo, ēre, uī, ūtum, *tr.*, to advise.

mons, tis, *m.*, a mountain.

mōra, *ae, f.*, delay, hindrance.

morbus, ī, *m.*, disease, sickness.

mōrior, mōrī, mortuus, *intr. dep.*, to die.

mōror, āri, ātus, *intr. dep.*, to delay, stay.

mors, mortis, *f.*, death.

mōs, mōris, *m.*, manner, custom, usage.

mōveo, ēre, mōvī, mōtum, *tr.*, to move.

Mūcius, ī, *m.*, a Roman youth.

multitūdo, ūnis, *f.*, multitude.

multus, *a, um, adj.*, much, many.

*Comp.* plūs; *super.* plūrīmus.

mundus, ī, *m.*, the world, universe.

mūnio, īre, īvī, ītum, *tr.*, to fortify.

mūrus, ī, *m.*, a wall, city wall.

mūs, mūris, *m.*, a mouse.

musca, *ae, f.*, a fly.

mūsīca, *ae, f.*, music.

mūto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to change.

Mūsia, *ae, f.*, a country in Asia Minor.

## N.

narro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to relate.

nascor, ī, nātus, *dep.*, to be born.

nāsus, ī, *m.*, the nose.

nātū, *ablat.*, in age, by birth.

nātūra, *ae, f.*, nature.

nātus, *a, um. See* nascor.

nauta, *ae, m.*, a sailor.

nāvālis, *e, adj.*, naval.

nāvīgo, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to sail.

nāvis, *is, f.*, a ship.

nē, *adv.*, not.

**nē**, *conj.*, that not, lest: **nē—quīdem**, not—even.

**nē**, *an interrog. particle not translated in direct questions; in indirect questions, whether; or.*

**necesse**, *indeclin. adj.*, necessary.

**nēco**, *āre, āvī, ātum, tr.*, to kill.

**nēgo**, *āre, āvī, ātum, tr.*, to deny, refuse.

**nēmo**, *īnis, m. and f. (ne + homo)*, no one, nobody; no.

**nēpōs**, *ōtis, m.*, a grandson.

**Nervius**, *ī, m.*, a Nervian.

**nescio**, *īre, īvī, ītum, tr.*, I do not know.

**Nestor**, *ōris, m.*, an aged Greek chief at the siege of Troy.

**neuter**, *tra, trum, adj.*, neither.

**nīger**, *gra, grum, adj.*, black, dark.

**nīhil**, *indeclin. n.*, nothing; not, not at all.

**nīsi**, *conj.*, if not, unless.

**nix**, *nīvis, f.*, snow.

**no**, *āre, āvī, ātum, intr.*, to swim.

**nōbīlis**, *e, adj.*, noble.

**nōlo**, *nolle, nōlūī, —, irr. tr. and intr.*, to be unwilling, not to wish.

**nōmen**, *īnis, n.*, a name.

**nōmīno**, *āre, āvī, ātum, tr.*, to name, call.

**nōn**, *adv.*, not, no.

**nonnumquam**, *adv.*, sometimes.

**nosco**, *ēre, nōvī, nōtum, tr.*, to know.

**noster**, *tra, trum, poss. adj. pron.*, our, our own, ours.

**nōvī**. See **nosco**.

**nōvus**, *a, um, adj.*, new.

**nox**, *noctis, f.*, night.

**nūbēs**, *is, f.*, a cloud.

**nūdo**, *āre, āvī, ātum, tr.*, to strip.

**nūdus**, *a, um, adj.*, stripped, nude.

**nullus**, *a, um, adj. (ne + ullus)*, no, none, not any.

**num**, *conj.*, whether, in indirect questions. In direct questions it implies the answer no.

**Nūma**, *ae, m.*, the second king of Rome.

**nūmēro**, *āre, āvī, ātum, tr.*, to count, number.

**nūmērus**, *ī, m.*, number.

**Nūmītor**, *ōris, m.*, an Italian king.

**nummus**, *ī, m.*, a coin; a sesterce.

**numquam**, *adv.*, never.

**nunc**, *adv.*, now.

**nuntio**, *āre, āvī, ātum, tr.*, to announce.

**nuntius**, *ī, m.*, a messenger.

**nūper**, *adv.*, lately.

**nuptiae**, *ārum, f. pl.*, a marriage.

## O.

**ob**, *prep. with accus.*, for, on account of, for the purpose of.

**oblīviscor**, *ī, lītus, dep.*, to forget.

**obscurus**, *a, um, adj.*, obscure.

**obses**, *īdis, m. and f.*, a hostage.

**ob-sisto**, *ēre, stītī, stītum, intr.*, to oppose.

**occāsio**, *ōnis, f.*, opportunity.

**occāsus**, *ūs, m.*, a setting of the sun, etc.

**oc-cīdo**, *ēre, cīdī, cīsum, tr.*, to kill, slay.

**occūpo**, *āre, āvī, ātum, tr.*, to occupy.

**ocūlus**, *ī, m.*, the eye.

**ōdium**, *ī, n.*, hatred.

**offīcium**, *ī, n.*, a service, duty.

**omnis**, *e, adj.*, every, all, whole.

**onus**, *ōris, n.*, a burden.

**ōpem**, **ōpēs**. See **ops**.

ōpīnor, āri, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to think,  
be of opinion.

oppīdum, ī, *n.*, a town.

opportūnus, a, um, *adj.*, suitable.

op-prīmo, ēre, pressī, pressum,  
*tr.*, to overcome, overpower.

op-pugno, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to  
attack, besiege.

ops, ōpis, *f.*, aid, help; *plur.*, ōpēs,  
means, resources.

optābilis, e, *adj.*, desirable.

optīmus. *Super. of bonus.*

opto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to wish  
for.

opus, *indeclin. noun and adj.*,  
need; necessary.

ōrātio, ōnis, *f.*, speech, oration.

ōrātor, ōris, *m.*, an orator.

Ōrestes, is, *m.*, son of Agamem-  
non.

Orgōtōrix, īgis, *m.*, a chief of the  
Helvetians.

ōrior, īrī, ortus, *intr. dep.*, to rise,  
arise, spring.

orno, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to adorn.

ortus, a, um. *See ōrior.*

ōs, ossis, *n.*, a bone.

ōvis is, *f.*, a sheep.

## P.

pābūlum, ī, *n.*, forage, food.

pār, pāris, *adj.*, equal, like.

pārens, entis, *m. and f.*, a parent.

pāreo, ēre, uī, ītum, *intr.*, to obey.

Pāris, īdis, *m.*, a son of Priam.

pāro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to prepare,  
procure.

pars, partis, *f.*, a part; *plural*,  
*also*, a party.

partior, īrī, ītus, *tr. dep.*, to di-  
vide.

parvus, a, um, *adj.*, little, small.

*Comp. mīnor; super. mīnīmus.*

pastor, ōris, *m.*, a shepherd.

pāteo, ēre, uī, —, *intr.*, to be open.

pāter, tris, *m.*, a father.

pātria, ae, *f.*, one's country.

paucī, ae, a, *plur. adj.*, a few.

paulus, a, um, *adj.*, little, small.

pauper, ēris, *m.*, a poor man.

Pausānias, ae, *m.*, a Greek general.

pāvor, ōris, *m.*, fear.

pax, pācis, *f.*, peace.

pecco, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to err,  
sin.

pēcūnia, ae, *f.*, money.

pēcus, ōris, *n.*, a flock.

pello, ēre, pēpūlī, pulsum, *tr.*, to  
drive, expel, banish.

Pēlops, ōpis, *m.*, king of Phrygia.

pēpūlī. *See pello.*

per, *prep. with accus.*, through.

per-fēro, ferre, tūlī, lātum, *irr. tr.*,  
to endure, suffer.

pergo, ēre, perrexī, perrectum,  
*intr.*, to go on, continue.

pēricūlum, ī, *n.*, danger, peril.

pēritus, a, um, *adj.*, skilful.

per-mitto, ēre, mīsi, missum, *tr.*,  
to permit.

persēvērō, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr. and*  
*intr.*, to persist, continue.

per-suādeo, ēre, suāsī, suasum,  
*tr.*, to persuade.

pēs, pēdis, *m.*, a foot.

pēto, ēre, īvī, ītum, *tr.*, to seek,  
ask.

Pharnābāzus, ī, *m.*, a Persian sa-  
trap.

phīlōsōphia, ae, *f.*, philosophy.

Phōcion, ōnis, *m.*, an Athenian  
general.

pīger, gra, grum, *adj.*, lazy.

pīrāta, ae, m., a pirate.  
 pīrāticus, a, um, *adj.*, piratic.  
 Pīso, ōnis, m., Piso.  
 Plāto, ōnis, m., a Greek philosopher.  
 plēnus, a, um, *adj.*, full.  
 plūrīmus, a, um. *See* multus.  
 plūs, *adv.*, more.  
 plūs. *See* multus.  
 pōcūlum, ī, n., a cup.  
 pōeta, ae, m., a poet.  
 polleo, ēre, —, *intr.*, to be able.  
 Pompēius, ī, m., Pompey.  
 Pompōnia, ae, f., wife of Quintus Cicero.  
 pōmum, ī, n., fruit.  
 pons, pontis, m., a bridge.  
 pōpūlus, ī, m., a people, nation.  
 porta, ae, f., a gate.  
 posco, ēre, pōposcī, —, *tr.*, to demand, ask.  
 possum, posse, pōtūī, —, *irr. intr.*, to be able, I can.  
 post, *adv.*, after.  
 postūlo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to demand.  
 pōtior, īrī, ītus, *dep.*, to gain, take possession of.  
 praebeo, ēre, uī, ītum, *tr.*, to afford, furnish.  
 praeceptum, ī, n., a precept, rule.  
 praefuī. *See* praesum.  
 praemium, ī, n., a reward.  
 praesīdium, ī, n., a guard, garri-  
 son; protection.  
 praestābīlis, e, *adj.*, excellent.  
 praestans, antis, *adj.*, distinguished, eminent.  
 prae-sto, āre, stītī, stītum, *tr.*, to surpass, excel.  
 prae-sum, esse, fuī, —, *irr. intr.*, to be in command of; to command.

prātum, ī, n., a meadow.  
 prētium, ī, n., price, value.  
 prīmum, *adv.*, first; cum prīmum, as soon as.  
 princeps, īpis, m., a leader, chief.  
 prō, *prep. with ablat.*, before, in front of; for, on account of.  
 prōbo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to approve.  
 prō-cēdo, ēre, cessī, cessum, *intr.*, to advance.  
 prōdītio, ōnis, f., treason, treachery.  
 prō-dūco, ēre, duxī, ductum, *tr.*, to draw out, prolong.  
 proelium, ī, n., a battle.  
 prōfectus. *See* prōfisciscor.  
 prōfisciscor, ī, fectus, *intr. dep.*, to set out, proceed.  
 prō-fūgio, ēre, fūgī, —, *intr.*, to flee forth, escape.  
 prō-hībeo, ēre, uī, ītum, *tr.*, to prevent, hinder.  
 prōpēro, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to hasten.  
 prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfuī, —, *irr. intr.*, to profit, benefit.  
 prō-tēgo, ēre, texī, tectum, *tr.*, to protect.  
 prōvincia, ae, f., a province.  
 proxīmus, a, um, *adj.*, nearest, next.  
 prūdēns, entis, *adj.*, prudent.  
 prūdētia, ae, f., prudence.  
 Ptōlōmaeus, ī, m., Ptolemy.  
 pūblicus, a, um, *adj.*, public; rēs  
 pūblica, a commonwealth.  
 puella, ae, f., a girl.  
 puer, ērī, m., a boy.  
 pugna, ae, f., a battle.  
 pugno, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to fight.

pulcher, ehra, ehrum, *adj.*, beautiful.

pulsus, a, um. *See* pello.

Pūnīcus, a, um, *adj.*, Punic, Carthaginian.

pūtūs, ī, *m.*, a well.

pūto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to think.

Pŕythia, ae, *f.*, the priestess who uttered the responses of Apollo at Delphi, the Pythia.

## Q.

Q. = Quintus.

quaero, ĕre, sīvī, sītum, *tr.*, to inquire, ask, seek.

quaestor, ōris, *m.*, a quaestor.

quam, *conj.*, than; as.

quam, *adv.*, how, how much.

quantus, a, um, *adj.*, how great, how much.

que, *conj.*, and. *It is appended to the word before which it would naturally come.*

quĕror, ī, questus, *dep.*, to complain.

quī, quae, quod, *rel. pron.*, who, which, that.

quī, quae, quod, *interr. adj. pron.*, which? what? who?

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, and quoddam, *indef. pron.*, a certain one, some one; a certain.

quīdem, *adv.*, indeed; nē—quīdem, not—even. —

quin, *conj.*, but that, but.

quis, quae, quid, *interr. pron.*, who? which? what?

quisquam, quaequam, quidquam or quicquam, *indef. pron.*, any one, any; anything.

quīvis, quaevis, quidvis and quodvis, *indef. pron.*, any one, any.

quō, *conj.*, that, in order that.

quod, *conj.*, because; that.

## R.

rāna, ae, *f.*, a frog.

rātio, ōnis, *f.*, reason.

rĕcens, entis, *adj.*, fresh, recent.

rĕ-dūco, ĕre, duxī, ductum, *tr.*, to lead back.

rĕ-fugio, ĕre, fugī, —, *intr.*, to flee back.

rĕgīna, ae, *f.*, a queen.

rĕgius, a, um, *adj.*, royal, regal.

regno, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to reign.

regnum, ī, *n.*, a kingdom.

rĕlictus. *See* rĕlinquo.

rĕ-līgo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to bind.

rĕ-linquo, ĕre, līquī, lictum, *tr.*, to leave.

Rĕmus, ī, *m.*, brother of Romulus.

rĕpente, *adv.*, suddenly.

rĕpĕrio, ĩre, pĕrī, pertum, *tr.*, to find.

rĕs, rĕī, *f.*, a thing, fact, matter;

rĕs pŭblica, a republic.

re-spondeo, ĕre, dī, sum, *tr.*, to answer, reply.

responsum, ī, *n.*, an answer, reply.

rĕte, is, *n.*, a net.

rĕ-verto, ĕre, tī, sum, *intr.*, to return.

rĕ-vōco, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to recall.

rex, rĕgis, *m.*, a king.

Rhĕnus, ī, *m.*, the Rhine.

rīpa, ae, *f.*, bank of a stream.

rīvus, ī, *m.*, a brook.

Rhōdos, ī, *f.*, Rhodes, an island.

**rōgo**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to ask.  
**Rōma**, ae, *f.*, Rome.  
**Rōmānus**, ī, *m.*, a Roman.  
**Rōmānus**, a, um, *adj.*, Roman.  
**Rōmūlus**, ī, *m.*, the mythical founder of Rome.  
**Rullus**, ī, *m.*, Rullus.  
**rūs**, rūris, *n.*, the country.

## S.

**sacra**, ōrum, *n. pl.*, a sacrifice; sacred rites.  
**saepe**, *adv.*, often.  
**sāgitta**, ae, *f.*, an arrow.  
**Sāguntum**, ī, *n.*, a city in Spain.  
**sālūs**, ūtis, *f.*, safety.  
**sālūto**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to salute.  
**salvus**, a, um, *adj.*, safe, secure.  
**sanguis**, īnis, *m.*, blood.  
**sānus**, a, um, *adj.*, sane, sound, rational.  
**sāpiens**, entis, *adj.*, wise.  
**sāpientia**, ae, *f.*, wisdom.  
**sātis**, *adv.*, enough, sufficiently.  
**saxum**, ī, *n.*, a rock.  
**scēlus**, ēris, *n.*, a crime.  
**scio**, īre, īvī, ītum, *tr.*, to know.  
**Scīpio**, ōnis, *m.*, a Roman general.  
**scribo**, ěre, ipsī, iptum, *tr.*, to write.  
**scriptor**, ōris, *m.*, a writer.  
**Scythia**, ae, *m.*, a Scythian.  
**sēcūtus**. See **sēquor**.  
**sēdeo**, ěre, sēdī, sessum, *intr.*, to sit.  
**semper**, *adv.*, always.  
**sēnātor**, ōris, *m.*, a senator.  
**sēnātus**, ūs, *m.*, a senate.  
**Sēnēca**, ae, *m.*, a Stoic philosopher.  
**sēnectūs**, ūtis, *f.*, old age.  
**sēnex**, sēnis, *m.*, an old man.

**sententia**, ae, *f.*, opinion, sentiment.  
**sentio**, īre, sensī, sensum, *tr.*, to feel, think.  
**Sēquānus**, ī, *m.*, one of the Sequani.  
**sēquor**, ī, sēcūtus, *tr. dep.*, to follow.  
**sermo**, ōnis, *m.*, speech, conversation.  
**sēre**, *adv.*, late, too late.  
**serva**, ae, *f.*, a female slave.  
**servio**, īre, īvī, ītum, *intr.*, to serve.  
**serve**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to keep, save.  
**servus**, ī, *m.*, a slave.  
**sī**, *conj.*, if.  
**sic**, *adv.*, so, in such a manner.  
**Sicilia**, ae, *f.*, Sicily.  
**sīdus**, ēris, *n.*, a constellation, star.  
**silva**, ae, *f.*, a wood, forest.  
**sīmīlis**, e, *adj.*, like.  
**sīmīlītudo**, īnis, *f.*, likeness.  
**sīmūlo**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to pretend.  
**sīne**, *prep. with ablat.*, without.  
**singulāris**, e, *adj.*, remarkable.  
**sōcer**, ōrī, *m.*, a father-in-law.  
**Sōcrātes**, is, *m.*, an Athenian philosopher.  
**sōl**, sōlis, *m.*, the sun.  
**sōleo**, ěre, sōlītus, *half dep.*, to be wont or accustomed.  
**sōlium**, ī, *n.*, a throne.  
**Sōlon**, ōnis, *m.*, an Athenian law-giver.  
**sōlum**, ī, *n.*, soil, ground.  
**sōlus**, a, um, *adj.*, alone, only.  
**solvo**, ěre, solvī, sōlūtum, *tr.*, to loosen, release.  
**somnus**, ī, *m.*, sleep.  
**sōnītus**, ūs, *m.*, a sound.

**sōror**, ōris, *f.*, a sister.  
**sospes**, ūtis, *adj.*, safe.  
**Sparta**, ae, *f.*, Sparta.  
**spēcīa**, ōī, *f.*, sight, form, appearance.  
**specto**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to look, look at.  
**spēcūlor**, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to spy out, observe.  
**spēcūs**, ūs, *m.*, a cave.  
**spēro**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to hope, hope for.  
**spēs**, ēī, *f.*, hope.  
**spōlio**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to rob., strip.  
**stātūra**, ae, *f.*, stature.  
**stella**, ae, *f.*, a star.  
**sto**, āre, stētī, stātum, *intr.*, to stand.  
**strēnuus**, a, um, *adj.*, vigorous, active.  
**stūdiōsus**, a, um, *adj.*, fond.  
**stultītia**, ae, *f.*, folly.  
**stultus**, a, um, *adj.*, foolish.  
**sub**, *prep. with acc. or ablat.*, under; towards.  
**sūb-īgo**, ěre, ēgī, actum, *tr.*, to subdue, reduce.  
**sub-jicio**, ěre, jēcī, jectum, *tr.*, to cast or put under.  
**sub-vēho**, ěre, vexī, vectum, *tr.*, to carry or bring up.  
**suī**, *reflex pers. pron.*, of himself, herself, or itself.  
**sulco**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to furrow, plough.  
**Sulla**, ae, *m.*, a Roman dictator.  
**sum**, esse, fuī, —, *irr. intr.*, to be.  
**summus**, a, um, *adj.*, the highest, greatest.  
**sūmo**, ěre, sumpsī, sumptum, *tr.*, to take, assume.

**sūpĕro**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to overcome, vanquish.  
**sūper-sum**, esse, fuī, —, *irr. intr.*, to be over, survive, remain.  
**sus-tīneo**, ěre, uī, tentum, *tr.*, to withstand, sustain.  
**suus**, a, um, *poss. adj. pron.*, his, her, its, their, his own, etc.

## T.

**tāceo**, ěre, uī, ĭtum, *intr.*, to be silent.  
**taedium**, ī, *n.*, weariness.  
**tālentum**, ī, *n.*, a talent, equal to \$1182 in gold.  
**tam**, *adv.*, so, so much; tam—quam, so much—as.  
**tango**, ěre, tētīgī, tactum, *tr.*, to touch.  
**tantus**, a, um, *adj.*, so great, so much; tantus—quantus, so much or great—as.  
**Tarquīnīi**, ōrum, *m. pl.*, a city in Italy.  
**Tarquīnius**, ī, *m.*, a Roman king.  
**taurus**, ī, *m.*, a bull.  
**tectum**, ī, *n.*, a roof.  
**tĕgo**, ěre, texī, tectum, *tr.*, to cover.  
**tempestās**, ātis, *f.*, a storm.  
**templum**, ī, *n.*, a temple.  
**tempus**, ōris, *n.*, time.  
**tĕnĕbrae**, ārum, *f. pl.*, darkness.  
**tĕneo**, ěre, uī, tum, *tr.*, to hold.  
**tĕner**, ěra, ěrum, *adj.*, tender.  
**terra**, ae, *f.*, land; the earth.  
**terreo**, ěre, uī, ĭtum, *tr.*, to terrify.  
**terrībīlis**, e, *adj.*, terrible.  
**testis**, is, *m. and f.*, a witness.  
**tētīgī**. See tango.  
**theātrum**, ī, *n.*, a theatre.



**Themistōcles**, *is, m.*, an Athenian statesman.  
**Thermōpŷlæ**, *ārum, f. pl.*, the famous defile of Oeta.  
**tīmeo**, *ēre, uī, —, tr.*, to fear.  
**tīmīdus**, *a, um, adj.*, timid.  
**Tītus**, *ī, m.*, a Roman emperor.  
**tondeo**, *ēre, tōtōndī, tonsum, tr.*, to shear.  
**tōt**, *indecl. adj.*, so many.  
**tōtus**, *a, um, adj.*, the whole, all.  
**trā-do**, *ēre, dīdī, dītum, tr.*, to give up, deliver, surrender.  
**trā-jīcio**, *ēre, jēcī, jectum, tr. and intr.*, to cross; to transport.  
**trans**, *prep. with accus.*, over, across.  
**trans-dūco**, *ēre, xī, ctum, tr.*, to lead across.  
**trans-eo**, *īre, īvī, ĭtum, irr. tr.*, to cross.  
**transītus**, *ūs, m.*, a crossing, passage.  
**trīdium**, *ī, n.*, three days.  
**tristis**, *is, adj.*, sad.  
**tristītia**, *ae, f.*, sadness.  
**Trōja**, *ae, f.*, Troy.  
**Trōjānus**, *ī, m.*, a Trojan.  
**Trōjānus**, *a, um, adj.*, Trojan.  
**turpīter**, *adv.*, shamefully.  
**tūtōr**, *ārī, ātus, tr. dep.*, to defend, protect.  
**tūtus**, *a, um, adj.*, safe, secure.  
**tuus**, *a, um, poss. adj. pron.*, thy, thy own; your, your own.  
**tŷrannus**, *ī, m.*, a tyrant, ruler.

U.

**ūbi**, *adv.*, where.  
**ulciscor**, *ī, ultus, tr. dep.*, to avenge, revenge.

**ullus**, *a, um, adj.*, any, any one.  
**ultīmus**, *a, um, adj.*, the last.  
**ultor**, *ōris, m.*, an avenger.  
**umbra**, *ae, f.*, shade, shadow.  
**unda**, *ae, f.*, a wave.  
**urbs**, *urbis, f.*, a city.  
**ūsus**, *ūs, m.*, use; experience; need.  
**ut**, *conj.*, that, so that.  
**ūter**, *tra, trum, adj.*, which of the two.  
**ūtīlis**, *e, adj.*, useful.  
**ūtīlītās**, *ātis, f.*, use, benefit.  
**ūtīnam**, *adv.*, O that! would that.  
**utrum**, *conj.*, whether, in indirect questions. In direct questions it is not translated.  
**uxor**, *ōris, f.*, a wife.

V.

**vādum**, *ī, n.*, a ford.  
**vāleo**, *ēre, uī, ĭtum, intr.*, to avail, prevail, be powerful.  
**vālētūdo**, *īnis, f.*, health.  
**vārius**, *a, um, adj.*, various, different.  
**vastus**, *a, um, adj.*, vast, enormous.  
**vātes**, *is, m. and f.*, a prophet.  
**vectīgal**, *ālis, n.*, revenue.  
**vēnātor**, *ōris, m.*, a hunter.  
**vendo**, *ēre, dīdī, dītum, tr.*, to sell.  
**vēnio**, *īre, vēnī, ventum, intr.*, to come.  
**ventus**, *ī, m.*, the wind.  
**vēr**, *vēris, n.*, spring.  
**verbum**, *ī, n.*, a word.  
**vērē**, *adv.*, truly.  
**vēreor**, *ērī, ĭtus, tr. dep.*, to fear.  
**Vergīlius**, *ī, m.*, Virgil.  
**Verres**, *is, m.*, a Roman governor of Sicily.  
**versus**, *ūs, m.*, a verse.

**verto**, *ĕre*, *tī*, *sum*, *tr.*, to turn; to impute.

**vĕrus**, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, true.

**vester**, *tra*, *trum*, *poss. adj. pron.*, your, your own, yours.

**vestio**, *īre*, *īvī*, *ītum*, *tr.*, to clothe.

**vĕtus**, *ĕris*, *adj.*, old.

**vexo**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *tr.*, to harass, annoy.

**via**, *ae*, *f.*, a way, road.

**vīcī**. See **vinco**.

**victor**, *ĕris*, *m.*, a victor.

**victōria**, *ae*, *f.*, victory.

**vīcus**, *ī*, *m.*, a village.

**vīdeo**, *ĕre*, *vidī*, *vīsum*, *tr.*, to see.

**vīdeor**, *ĕrī*, *vīsus*, *intr. dep.*, to seem, appear.

**vīgīlantia**, *ae*, *f.*, wakefulness.

**vincio**, *īre*, *vinxi*, *vinctum*, *tr.*, to bind.

**vinco**, *ĕre*, *vīcī*, *victum*, *tr.*, to conquer.

**vincūlum**, *ī*, *n.*, a chain, fetter.

**vīnum**, *ī*, *n.*, wine.

**viōlo**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *tr.*, to violate.

**vir**, *vīrī*, *m.*, a man; a husband.

**vīrēs**. See **vīs**.

**virgo**, *īnis*, *f.*, a maiden.

**virtūs**, *ūtis*, *f.*, virtue; manliness, courage.

**vīs**, *vīs*, *f.*, strength, force, power.

**vīsus**. See **vīdeo**, **vīdeor**.

**vīta**, *ae*, *f.*, life.

**vītium**, *ī*, *n.*, a fault, vice.

**vīvo**, *ĕre*, *vixī*, *victum*, *intr.*, to live.

**vōco**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *tr.*, to call, name.

**vōlo**, *velle*, *vōluī*, —, *irr. tr.*, to will, to wish.

**vōluntās**, *ātis*, *f.*, wish, inclination, disposition.

**vōluptās**, *ātis*, *f.*, pleasure.

**vōveo**, *ĕre*, *vōvī*, *vōtum*, *tr.*, to vow.

**vox**, *vōcis*, *f.*, the voice.

**vulnĕro**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *tr.*, to wound.

**vulnus**, *ĕris*, *n.*, a wound.

**vultus**, *ūs*, *m.*, the look, countenance, face.

## Z.

**Zāma**, *ae*, *f.*, a city in Africa.

**Zēno**, *ōnis*, *m.*, a Greek philosopher.



# ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

## A.

able, to be, possum, posse, pōtūi.  
 absent, to be, absum, esse, fui.  
 abstain, abstinēo, ēre, tīnui, tentum.  
 accomplish, conficō, ēre, feci, fec-tum.  
 accuse, accūso, āre, avi, atum.  
 accustomed, to be, sōleo, ēre, sōlitus.  
 Achilles, Achilles, is, m.  
 acquit, absolvo, ēre, solvī, sōlūtum.  
 across, trans, *with acc.*  
 advance, prōcēdo, ēre, cessi, cessum.  
 Aegisthus, Aegisthus, i, m.  
 Aeneas, Aeneas, ae, m.  
 after, *adv.*, post.  
 against, contrā, *with acc.*  
 Agamemnon, Agamemnon, ōnis, m.  
 age, aevum, i, n.  
 aid, auxilium, i, n.  
 all, omnis, e.  
 although, cum.  
 always, semper.  
 ambassador, lēgātus, i, m.  
 among, inter, *with acc.*  
 ancestors, mājōrēs, um, m. *pl.*  
 and, et.  
 animal, animal, ālis, n.  
 announce, nuntio, āre, avi, atum.  
 another, alius, a, ud.  
 another (of two), alter, ēra, ērum.  
 answer, respondeo, ēre, di, sum.  
 answer, responsum, i, n.  
 Antony, Antōnius, i, m.

Apollo, Apollo, Inis, m.  
 appear, videor, ēri, visus, *dep.*  
 apple, mālum, i, n.  
 approach, adītus, ūs, m.  
 approach, appropinquo, āre, avi, atum.  
 approve, prōbo, āre, avi, atum.  
 Arethusa, Arethūsa, ae, f.  
 Argonauts, Argonautae, ārum, m. *pl.*  
 Argos, Argi, ōrum, m. *pl.*  
 Ariovistus, Ariovistus, i, m.  
 arise, orior, iri, ortus, *dep.*  
 arms, arma, ōrum, n. *pl.*  
 army, exercitus, ūs, m.  
 Arpinum, Arpinum, i, n.  
 arrival, adventus, ūs, m.  
 arrive, advēnio, ire, vēni, ventum.  
 art, ars, artis, f.  
 artisan, fāber, brī, m.  
 Ascanius, Ascānius, i, m.  
 ask, rōgo, āre, avi, atum.  
 asylum, āsylum, i, n.  
 Athenian, Athēniensis, is, m.  
 Athens, Athēnae, ārum, f. *pl.*  
 attack, impētus, ūs, m.  
 Atticus, Atticus, i, m.  
 Augustus, Augustus, i, m.  
 authority, auctōritas, ātis, f.  
 avenger, ultor, ōris, m.  
 await, exspecto, āre, avi, atum.

## B.

bad, mālus, a, um.  
 baggage, impedimenta, orum, n. *pl.*

bank, *ripa*, *ae, f.*  
 battle, *proelium*, *i, n.*  
 battle-array, *aciēs*, *ēi, f.*  
 be, to, *sum, esse, fui.*  
 bear, *fēro, ferre, tūli, lātum.*  
 beautiful, *pulcher, chra, chrum.*  
 because, *cum.*  
 become, *fio, fiēri, factus.*  
 before, *adv.*, *ante.*  
 before, *prep.*, *prō, with ablat.*  
 beginning, *inīitium, i, n.*  
 Belgians, *Belgae, ārum, m. pl.*  
 benefit, to, *prōsum, prodesse, profui.*  
 benefit, *utilitas, ātis, f.*  
 besiege, *oppugno, āre, avi, atum.*  
 best, *optimus, a, um.*  
 better, *adj.*, *mēlior, us.*  
 beyond, *extrā, with acc.*  
 bind, *vincio, ire, vinxi, vinctum.*  
 bird, *avis, is, f.*  
 blame, *culpa, ae, f.*  
 blind, *caecus, a, um.*  
 blood, *sanguis, Inis, m.*  
 boast, *glōrior, āri, atus, dep.*  
 body, *corpus, ōris, n.*  
 bold, *audax, ācis.*  
 book, *liber, brī, m.*  
 born, to be, *nascor, i, nātus, dep.*  
 both—and, *et—et.*  
 boundless, *inīitūsus, a, um.*  
 boy, *puer, ēri, m.*  
 brave, *fortis, e.*  
 bravely, *fortiter.*  
 bribery, *ambītus, ūs, m.*  
 bridge, *pons, pontis, m.*  
 bright, *clārus, a, um.*  
 bring, *fēro, ferre, tūli, lātum.*  
 broad, *lātus, a, um.*  
 brother, *frāter, tris, m.*  
 Brutus, *Brūtus, i, m.*  
 build, *aedifco, āre, avi, atum.*  
 burden, *ōnus, ēris, n.*

but that, *quin.*

buy, *ēmo, ēre, ēmi, emptum.*

## C.

Caesar, *Caesar, āris, m.*  
 call = name, *appello, āre, avi, atum.*  
 call, *vōco, āre, avi, atum.*  
 call upon, *invōco, āre, avi, atum.*  
 camp, *castra, ōrum, n. pl.*  
 care, *cūra, ae, f.*  
 care for, *cūro, āre, avi, atum.*  
 carry, *fēro, ferre, tūli, lātum.*  
 carry on, *gēro, ēre, gessi, gestum.*  
 Carthage, *Carthāgo, Inis, f.*  
 catch, *capto, āre, avi, atum.*  
 Catiline, *Catilina, ae, m.*  
 Cato, *Cāto, ōnis, m.*  
 cause, *causa, ae, f.*  
 cavalry, *equitātus, ūs, m.*  
 cave, *spēcus, ūs, m.*  
 celebrate, *celebro, āre, avi, atum.*  
 certain, *a, quīdam, quaedam, quod-*  
*dam.*  
 change, *mūto, āre, avi, atum.*  
 chariot, *currus, ūs, m.*  
 cheerful, *hilāris, e.*  
 chief, *princeps, Ipis, m.*  
 children, *libērī, ōrum, m. pl.*  
 Cicero, *Cicēro, ōnis, m.*  
 citizen, *cīvis, is, m. and f.*  
 city, *urbs, urbis, f.*  
 civil, *cīvilis, e.*  
 clear, *clārus, a, um.*  
 close, *claudio, ēre, sī, sum.*  
 clothe, *vestio, ire, īvi, itum.*  
 collect, *confēro, ferre, tūli, collā-*  
*tum.*  
 come, *vēnio, ire, vēnī, ventum.*  
 command, *impēro, āre, avi, atum.*  
 command, be in, *praesum, esse, fui.*  
 commander, *impērātor, ōris, m.*

companion, cōmes, Itis, *m. and f.*  
 conceal, cēlo, āre, avi, atum.  
 condemn, damno, āre, avi, atum.  
 condemn, condemnno, āre, avi, atum.  
 Canon, Cōnon, ōnis, *m.*  
 conquer, vinco, ēre, vicī, victum.  
 conqueror, victor, ōris, *m.*  
 conspiracy, conjūrātio, ōnis, *f.*  
 consul, consul, ūlis, *m.*  
 conversation, sermo, ōnis, *m.*  
 copper, a, as, assis, *m.*  
 Corinth, Corinthus, i, *f.*  
 corn, frūmentum, i, *n.*  
 country (native), patria, ae, *f.*  
 country, rūs, rūris, *n.* To the  
 country, rūs; from the country,  
 rūre.  
 courage, virtūs, ūtis, *f.*  
 cover, tēgo, ēre, texi, tectum.  
 crime, crimen, inis, *n.*  
 cross, transeo, ire, ivi, itum.  
 cruel, crūdēlis, e.  
 cup, pōcūlum, i, *n.*  
 Cyclades, Cyclādes, um, *f. pl.*  
 Cyprus, Cyprus, i, *f.*

## D.

danger, pericūlum, i, *n.*  
 darkness, tenēbrae, ārum, *f. pl.*  
 daughter, filia, ae, *f.*  
 day, diēs, ēi, *m.*  
 dear, cārus, a, um.  
 death, mors, mortis, *f.*  
 deep, altus, a, um.  
 defend, dēfendo, ēre, dī, sum.  
 defender, dēfensor, ōris, *m.*  
 delay, mōra, ae, *f.*  
 delight, dēlecto, āre, avi, atum.  
 delightful, jūcundus, a, um.  
 deliver, trādo, ēre, dīdī, dītum.  
 Delphi, Delphī, ōrum, *m. pl.*

demand (*with importunity*), flā-  
 gito, āre, avi, atum.  
 demand, postūlo, āre, avi, atum.  
 deny, nēgo, āre, avi, atum.  
 deserve, mēreo, ēre, uī, itum.  
 design, consīlium, i, *n.*  
 desirable, optābilis, e.  
 desirous, cūpidus, a, um.  
 destroy (*efface*), dēleo, ēre, ēvi,  
 ētum.  
 destroy (*tear down*), diruo, ēre, uī,  
 ūtum.  
 destruction, exītiūm, i, *n.*  
 detect, dētēgo, ēre, xī, ctum.  
 differ, diffēro, ferre, distūli, dilā-  
 tum.  
 difficult, difficilis, e.  
 dignity, dignitās, ātis, *f.*  
 diligence, diligētia, ae, *f.*  
 dine, cēno, āre, avi, atum.  
 dinner, cēna, ae, *f.*  
 Diogenes, Diōgēnes, is, *m.*  
 distant, to be, absum, esse, fuī.  
 distribute, distribuo, ēre, uī, ūtum.  
 do, fācio, ēre, fēcī, factum.  
 door, jānuā, ae, *f.*  
 doubtful, dūbius, a, um.  
 draw, haurio, ire, hausī, haustum.  
 drive off, arceo, ēre, uī, —.

## E.

eager, avidus, a, um.  
 eagle, aquila, ae, *f.*  
 earth, terra, ae, *f.*  
 easy, fācilis, e.  
 elephant, ēlēphantus, i, *m.*  
 eloquence, ēlōquentia, ae, *f.*  
 employ, adhībeo, ēre, uī, itum.  
 emulate, aemūlor, āri, ātus, *dep.*  
 end, finis, is, *m.*  
 end, finio ire, ivi, itum.

enemy, hostis, is, *m.* *The plural is more frequently used.*

enough, sātis, *adv.*

enroll, adscribo, ēre, ipsi, iptum.

error, error, ōris, *m.*

escape, ēvādo, ēre, vāsī, vāsum.

even, not, nē—quidem.

every, omnis, *e.*

everything, omnia, *neut. pl.*

evil, malus, *a, um.*

evil, mālum, *i, n.*

examine, explōro, āre, avi, atum.

excite, excito, āre, avi, atum.

exile, exsiliū, *i, n.*

expect, exspecto, āre, avi, atum.

experience, ūsus, ūs, *m.*

eye, ōculus, *i, m.*

## F.

fact, rēs, ēī, *f.*

fall, cādo, ēre, cēcīdi, cāsum.

father, pāter, tris, *m.*

fault, vītium, *i, n.*

favor, fāveo, ēre, fāvī, fautum.

fear, mētus, ūs, *m.*

fear, tīmeo, ēre, uī, —.

fidelity, fidēs, ēī, *f.*

field, ager, grī, *m.*

fight, pugno, āre, avi, atum.

find, invēnio, ire, vēnī, ventum.

flee, fūgio, ēre, fūgī, fūgītum.

flee back, rēfūgio, ēre, fūgī, —.

flee forth, prōfūgio, ēre, fūgī, —.

fleet, classis, is, *f.*

flock, pēcus, ōris, *n.*

flower, flōs, ōris, *m.*

fly, musca, *ae, f.*

follow, sēquor, *i, sēcūtus.*

folly, stultitia, *ae, f.*

fond, amans, *antis.*

foolish, stultus, *a, um.*

foot, pēs, pēdis, *m.*

for the purpose of, causā, *following the genitive.*

forces, cōpia, ārum, *f. pl.*

forest, silva, *ae, f.*

forget, obliviscor, *i, litus, dep.*

form, forma, *ae, f.*

fort, castellum, *i, n.*

fortify, mūnio, ire, īvi, itum.

fortunate, fortunātus, *a, um.*

found, condo, ēre, dīdi, dītum.

free, liber, ēra, ērum.

frequently, frēquenter.

fresh (sweet), dulcis, *e.*

fresh, rēcens, *entis.*

friend, amīcus, *i, m.*

friendly, amīcus, *a, um.*

friendship, amīcitia, *ae, f.*

frog, rāna, *ae, f.*

from (=out of), *e or ex, with ablat.*

*ā or ab, with ablat.*

full, plēnus, *a, um.*

furnish, praebeo, ēre, uī, itum.

## G.

garden, hortus, *i, m.*

Gaul, Gallia, *ae, f.*

Gaul, Gallus, *i, m.*

general, dux, dūcis, *m.*

Geneva, Genēva, *ae, f.*

genius, ingēnium, *i, n.*

German, Germānus, *i, m.*

gift, dōnum, *i, n.*

girl, puella, *ae, f.*

give, do, dāre, dēdi, dātum.

glory, glōria, *ae, f.*

go, eo, ire, īvi, itum.

god, deus, *i, m.*

goddess, dea, *ae, f.*

gold, aurum, *i, n.*

good, bōnus, *a, um.*

grandfather, avus, *i, m.*  
 grateful, gratus, *a, um.*  
 great, magnus, *a, um.*  
 greatest, maximus, *a, um.*  
 Greece, Graecia, *ae, f.*  
 Greek, Graecus, *i, m.*  
 grief, dolor, *oris, m.*  
 guard, custos, *odis, m. and f.*  
 guard, custodio, *ire, iui, itum.*

## H.

hail, grando, *inis, f.*  
 hand, manus, *us, f.*  
 happen, accidere, *ere, di, —.*  
 happy, felix, *icis.*  
 harass, vexo, *are, avi, atum.*  
 hasten, propere, *are, avi, atum.*  
 have, habeo, *ere, ui, itum.*  
 he, is, ille.  
 head, caput, *itis, n.*  
 health, valetudo, *inis, f.*  
 hear, audio, *ire, iui, itum.*  
 heart, cor, *cordis, n.*  
 heavy, gravis, *e.*  
 Hector, Hector, *oris, m.*  
 height, altitudo, *inis, f.*  
 Helen, Hēlena, *ae, f.*  
 help, adiumentum, *i, n.*  
 Helvetian, Helveticus, *i, m.*  
 her, her own, suus, *a, um.*  
 Hercules, Heroules, *is, m.*  
 high, altus, *a, um.*  
 hill, collis, *is, m.*  
 himself (he), ipse.  
 his, his own, suus, *a, um.*  
 home, domum; at home, domi;  
     from home, domo.  
 Homer, Hōmerus, *i, m.*  
 honey, mel, mellis, *n.*  
 honor, honor, *oris, m.*  
 hope, spes, *ei, f.*

hope, spero, *are, avi, atum.*  
 horse, equus, *i, m.*  
 hostage, obses, *idis, m. and f.*  
 hour, hora, *ae, f.*  
 house, domus, *us, f.*  
 how great, quantus, *a, um.*  
 huge, ingens, *entis.*

## I.

I, ego, mei.  
 ignorant, ignarus, *a, um.*  
 imitation, imitatio, *onis, f.*  
 impatient, impatiens, *entis.*  
 impiety, impietas, *atis, f.*  
 impose, impono, *ere, posui, posu-*  
     *tum.*  
 impute, verito, *ere, ti, sum.*  
 in, in, *with ablat.*  
 inclination, voluntas, *atis, f.*  
 increase, augeo, *ere, auxi, auctum.*  
 infant, infans, *antis, m. and f.*  
 influence, auctoritas, *atis, f.*  
 injury, injuria, *ae, f.*  
 ink, atramentum, *i, n.*  
 inquire, quaero, *ere, sivi, situm.*  
 in-such-a-manner, sic; Ita.  
 into, in, *with accus.*  
 island, insula, *ae, f.*  
 Italy, Italia, *ae, f.*

## J.

Janus, Jānus, *i, m.*  
 join to, adjungo, *ere, junxi, junc-*  
     *tum.*  
 journey, iter, itineris, *n.*  
 judge, iudex, *icis, m.*  
 Jugurtha, Jugurtha, *ae, m.*  
 Jūno, Juno, *onis, f.*  
 Jupiter, Jupīter, *Jōvis, m.*

## K.

keep, servo, *äre, avi, atum.*  
 kill, occido, *äre, di, sum.*  
 king, rex, *rēgis, m.*  
 kingdom, regnum, *i, n.*  
 kingly, *rēgius, a, um.*  
 know (= to find out), cognosco, *äre, nōvi, nītum.*  
 know, scio, *ire, ivi, itum.*  
 know not, nescio, *ire, ivi, itum.*

## L.

Labienus, Labiēnus, *i, m.*  
 labor, *lābor, ōris, m.*  
 Lacedaemon, Lacedaemon, *ōnis, f.*  
 Lacedaemonian, Lacedaemōnius, *i, m.*  
 land, terra, *ae, f.*  
 language, lingua, *ae, f.*  
 large, magnus, *a, um.*  
 last, ultimus, *a, um.*  
 late, *sērō, adv.*  
 Latin, Latīnē, *adv.*  
 Latōna, Latōna, *ae, f.*  
 Lavinium, Lāvīnium, *i, n.*  
 law, lex, *lēgis, f.*  
 lead, *dūco, äre, xi, ctum.*  
 lead away, *abdūco, äre, xi, ctum.*  
 lead back, *redūco, äre, xi, ctum.*  
 lead out or forth, *ēdūco, äre, xi, ctum.*  
 leader, dux, *dūcis, m. and f.*  
 learn, disco, *äre, didici, —.*  
 learn (= ascertain), cognosco, *äre, nōvi, nītum.*  
 learned, doctus, *a, um.*  
 leave, relinquo, *äre, liqui, lictum.*  
 legion, *lēgio, ōnis, f.*  
 Lemnus, Lemnus, *i, f.*  
 let go, dimitto, *äre, isi, issum.*

letter, epistōla, *ae, f.; or, littērae, ārum, f. pl.*  
 liberate, libēro, *äre, avi, atum.*  
 liberty, libertās, *ātis, f.*  
 lieutenant, *lēgātus, i, m.*  
 life, vita, *ae, f.*  
 Lilybaeum, Lilybaeum, *i, n.*  
 lineage, *gēnus, äris, n.*  
 lion, leo, *ōnis, m.*  
 little, parvus, *a, um.*  
 live, *vīvo, äre, vixi, victum.*  
 lively, *alācer, cris, cre.*  
 long, longus, *a, um.*  
 look, look at, *specto, äre, avi, atum.*  
 lose, *āmitto, äre, isi, issum.*  
 love, *āmo, äre, avi, atum.*  
 low, humilis, *e.*

## M.

mad, to be, *fūro, äre, ui, —.*  
 made, to be, *fio, äri, factus.*  
 maiden, virgo, *inis, f.*  
 make, *fācio, äre, feci, factum; the passive is fio, äri, factus.*  
 make (= choose), *creo, äre, avi, atum.*  
 man, *hōmo, inis, m.*  
 man (also husband), *vir, vīri, m.*  
 many, *multī, ae, a.*  
 marriage, *nuptiae, ārum, f. pl.*  
 master (teacher), *magister, tri, m.*  
 master (of property), *domīnus, i, m.*  
 master (of slaves), *hērūs, i, m.*  
 mature, *matūrus, a, um.*  
 meadow, *prātum, i, n.*  
 memory, *mēmōria, ae, f.*  
 messenger, *nuntius, i, m.*  
 mild, *mītis, e.*  
 Milētus, *Milētus, i, f.*  
 Miltiades, Miltiādes, *is, m.*



mind, *anĭmus*, *ī*, *m*.  
 mindful, *mēmōr*, *ōris*.  
 money, *pecūnia*, *f*.  
 month, *mensis*, *m*.  
 moon, *lūna*, *ae*, *f*.  
 more, *amplius*, *adv*.  
 mother, *mātēr*, *tris*, *f*.  
 mountain, *mons*, *montis*, *m*.  
 mouse, *mūs*, *muris*, *m*.  
 move, *mōveo*, *ēre*, *mōvī*, *mōtum*.  
 multitude, *multitūdo*, *inis*, *f*.  
 music, *mūsica*, *ae*, *f*.  
 my, my own, *meus*, *a*, *um*.  
 Mysia, *Mysia*, *ae*, *f*.

N.

name, *nōmen*, *inis*, *n*.  
 name, *nōmĭno*, *āre*, *avi*, *atum*.  
 native country, *patria*, *ae*, *f*.  
 nature, *nātūra*, *ae*, *f*.  
 nearest, *proxĭmus*, *a*, *um*.  
 necessary, *opus*, *indeclin*.  
 need, *opus*, *indeclin*. *n*.  
 neither, *neuter*, *tra*, *trum*.  
 never, *numquam*.  
 night, *nox*, *noctis*, *f*.  
 no, *adj*., *nullus*, *a*, *um*.  
 noble, *nōbĭlis*, *e*.  
 no one, no man, *nēmo*, *inis*, *m*.  
*and f*.  
 nose, *nāsus*, *ī*, *m*.  
 not, *nōn*.  
 not (*with imperat.*), *nē*.  
 not even, *nē—quidem*.  
 nothing, *nĭhil*, *indeclin*. *n*.  
 number, *nūmĕrus*, *ī*, *m*.

O.

obey, *pāreo*, *ēre*, *uī*, *ītum*.  
 occupy, *occūpo*, *āre*, *avi*, *atum*.

of, *dē*, *with ablat.*, *when a prep. is to be used*.

old, *vētus*, *ēris*.  
 old age, *sēnectūs*, *ūtis*, *f*.  
 old man, *sēnex*, *sēnis*, *m*.  
 on, in, *with ablat*.  
 one (of two), *alter*, *ēra*, *ērum*.  
 one by one, *singŭlī*, *ae*, *a*.  
 open, to be, *pāteo*, *ēre*, *uī*, —.  
 open (*tr.*), *apĕrio*, *īre*, *uī*, *pertum*.  
 opinion, *sententia*, *ae*, *f*.  
 opportunity, *occāsio*, *ōnis*, *f*.  
 oppose, *obsisto*, *ēre*, *stĭtī*, *stĭtum*.  
 or not, *neque*.  
 oration, *ōrātio*, *ōnis*, *f*.  
 orator, *ōrātor*, *ōris*, *m*.  
 order, *jūbeo*, *ēre*, *jussī*, *jussum*.  
 Orestes, *Orestes*, *is*, *m*.  
 Orgetorix, *Orgetōrix*, *īgis*, *m*.  
 other, *ālius*, *a*, *ud*.  
 our, *noster*, *tra*, *trum*.  
 ox, *bōs*, *bōvis*, *m*.

P.

paper, *charta*, *ae*, *f*.  
 parent, *pārens*, *entis*, *m*. *and f*.  
 part, *pars*, *partis*, *f*.  
 party, *plural of pars*.  
 peace, *pax*, *pācis*, *f*.  
 people, *pōpŭlus*, *ī*, *m*.  
 persist, *persevēro*, *āre*, *avi*, *atum*.  
 persuade, *persuādeo*, *ēre*, *āsī*, *āsum*.  
 Pharnabazus, *Pharnabāzus*, *ī*, *m*.  
 Phocion, *Phōcion*, *ōnis*, *m*.  
 pirate, *pirāta*, *ae*, *m*.  
 place, *lōcus*, *ī*, *m*. *Plural, locī and lōca*.  
 place, *collōco*, *āre*, *avi*, *atum*.  
 plan, *consĭllium*, *ī*, *n*.  
 pleasing, *grātus*, *a*, *um*.  
 pleasure, *vōluptās*, *ātis*, *f*.

plough, *aro, āre, avi, atum.*  
 plough (to make a furrow), *sulco, āre, avi, atum.*  
 Pompey, *Pompēius, i, m.*  
 Pompōnia, *Pompōnia, ae, f.*  
 poor, *pauper, ēris.*  
 powerful, to be, *vāleo, ēre, ui, itum.*  
 practise, *cōlo, ēre, ui, cultum.*  
 praise, *laus, laudis, f.*  
 praise, *laudo, āre, avi, atum.*  
 present, to be in or at, *intersum, esse, fui, —.*  
 present, to be, *adsum, esse, fui, —.*  
 pretend, *sīmūlo, āre, avi, atum.*  
 pretext, *mātēria, ae, f.*  
 proceed, *prōficiāscor, i, fectus, dep.*  
 prolong, *prōdūco, ēre, xi, ctum.*  
 prophet, *vātes, is, m. and f.*  
 province, *prōvincia, ae, f.*  
 prudence, *prūdētia, ae, f.*  
 prudent, *prūdēns, entis.*  
 punishment, *poena, ae, f.*  
 put under, *subjīcio, ere, jēcī, jectum.*  
 Pythia, *Pythia, ae, f.*

## Q.

queen, *rēgina, ae, f.*

## R.

rational, *sānus, a, um.*  
 read, *lēgo, ēre, lēgī, lectum.*  
 recall, *rēvōco, āre, avi, atum.*  
 recent, *rēcens, entis.*  
 recognize, *agnosco, ēre, nōvī, nītum.*  
 reign, *regno, āre, avi, atum.*  
 relate, *narro, āre, avi, atum.*  
 release, *solvo, ēre, solvī, sōlūtum.*  
 relieve, *lēvo, āre, avi, atum.*

remarkable, *singulāris, e.*  
 Remus, *Rēmus, i, m.*  
 republic, *rēs publica.*  
 rescue, *ērīpio, ēre, ui, reptum.*  
 reside, *hābitō, āre, avi, atum.*  
 resources, *ōpēs, plur. of ops.*  
 retire, *concedō, ēre, cessī, cessum.*  
 return, *rēverto, ēre, tī, sum.*  
 revenue, *vectigal, ālis, n.*  
 reward, *praemium, i, n.*  
 Rhine, *Rhēnus, i, m.*  
 Rhodes, *Rhōdos, i, f.*  
 rich, *dives, itis; dis, ditis.*  
 ripe, *mātūrus, a, um.*  
 river, *flūmen, inis, n.*  
 road, *via, ae, f.*  
 rob, *spōlio, āre, avi, atum.*  
 Roman, *Rōmānus, i, m.*  
 Roman, *Rōmānus, a, um.*  
 Rome, *Rōma, ae, f.*  
 Romulus, *Rōmūlus, i, m.*  
 Rullus, *Rullus, i, m.*

## S.

sad, *tristis, e.*  
 safe, *tūtus, a, um.*  
 safety, *sālūs, ūtis, f.*  
 Saguntum, *Sāguntum, i, n.*  
 sail, *nāvīgo, āre, avi, atum.*  
 sailor, *nauta, ae, m.*  
 same, *idem, eadem, idem.*  
 save, *servo, āre, avi, atum.*  
 say, *dīco, ēre, xī, ctum.*  
 Scipio, *Scipio, ōnis, m.*  
 Scythian, *Scŷtha, ae, m.*  
 sea, *mare, is, n.*  
 see, *vīdeo, ēre, vidī, vīsum.*  
 seek, *pēto, ēre, ivī, itum.*  
 seem, *vīdeor, ērī, vīsus, dep.*  
 select, *dēlīgo, ēre, lēgī, lectum.*  
 self, *ipse; I myself, ego ipse.*

sell, vendo, ēre, dīdī, dītum.  
 senate, sēnātus, ūs, *m*.  
 senator, sēnātor, ōris, *m*.  
 send, mitto, ēre, mīsi, missum.  
 serpent, drāco, ōnis, *m*.  
 serve, servio, īre, ivi, itum.  
 service, officium, ī, *n*.  
 sesterce, nummus, ī, *m*.  
 settle, collōco, āre, avi, atum.  
 shade, shadow, umbra, ae, *f*.  
 shamefully, turpiter.  
 sharp, ācer, cris, cre.  
 shed, fundo, ēre, fūdī, fūsum.  
 sheep, ōvis, is, *f*.  
 shepherd, pastor, ōris, *m*.  
 ship, nāvis, is, *f*.  
 shore, litus, ōris, *n*.  
 short, brēvis, e.  
 Sicily, Sicīlia, ae, *f*.  
 silent, to be, tāceo, ēre, uī, itum.  
 silver, argentum, ī, *n*.  
 similar, sīmīlis, e.  
 since, *conj.*, cum.  
 sing, canto, āre, avi, atum.  
 sister, sōror, ōris, *f*.  
 sit, sēdeo, ēre, sēdī, sessum.  
 size, magnitūdo, īnis, *f*.  
 skillful, pēritus, a, um.  
 slave, servus, ī, *m*.  
 slay, caedo, ēre, cēcidī, caesum.  
 sleep, dormio, īre, ivi, itum.  
 sleep, somnus, ī, *m*.  
 small, parvus, a, um.  
 smallest, *super. of* parvus.  
 snow, nix, nīvis, *f*.  
 so, ita; sic.  
 so great, tantus, a, um.  
 Socrates, Sōcrātes, is, *m*.  
 soil, solum, ī, *n*.  
 soldier, miles, ītis, *m*.  
 some one, aliquis, qua, quid.  
 sometimes, nonnumquam.

son, filius, ī, *m*.  
 son-in-law, gēner, ērī, *m*.  
 song, cantus, ūs, *m*.  
 sound, sōnītus, ūs, *m*.  
 Sparta, Sparta, ae, *f*.  
 speak, dico, ēre, xī, ctum.  
 speak, lōquor, ī, lōcūtus, *dep*.  
 speech, ōrātio, ōnis, *f*.  
 spring, vēr, vēris, *n*.  
 spring, fons, fontis, *m*.  
 star, stella, ae, *f*.  
 state, civītās, ātis, *f*.  
 station, collōco, āre, avi, atum.  
 stature, stātūra, ae, *f*.  
 stone, lāpis, īdis, *m*.  
 storm, tempestās, ātis, *f*.  
 strike, fērio, īre, —, —.  
 strip, nūdo, āre, avi, atum.  
 subdue, sūbigo, ēre, ēgī, actum.  
 suffer, perfēro, ferre, tūli, lātum.  
 suitable, idōnēus, a, um.  
 suitable, opportūnus, a, um.  
 Sulla, Sulla, ae, *m*.  
 summer, aestās, ātis, *f*.  
 sun, sōl, sōlis, *m*.  
 sunset, sōlis occāsus.  
 superior, to be, praesto, āre, stīti, stītum.  
 surpass. *See preceding word*.  
 surrender, dēdo, ēre, dīdī, dītum.  
 sustain, sustīneo, ēre, uī, tentum.  
 sweet, dulcis, e.  
 swift, cēler, ēris, ēre.  
 swim, no, āre, avi, atum.

## T.

take, cāpio, ēre, cēpī, captum.  
 talent, tālentum, ī, *n*.  
 Tarquinii, Tarquīnii, ōrum, *m. pl*.  
 Tarquinius, Tarquīnius, ī, *m*.  
 teach, dōceo, ēre, uī, ctum.

teacher, māgister, trī, *m.*  
 tear, lacryma, ae, *f.*  
 temple, templum, ī, *n.*  
 tender, tēner, ēra, ērum.  
 terms, *plur. of* condīcio, ōnis, *f.*  
 terrify, terreo, ēre, uī, ūtum.  
 than, quam.  
 that, ille, illa, illud.  
 that, of yours, iste, ista, istud.  
 that, *conj.*, ut = *in order that.*  
 that not, *in purpose clauses*, nē.  
 that not, *in result clauses*, ut nōn.  
 theft, furtum, ī, *n.*  
 their, their own, suus, a, um.  
 there = *in that place*, ibi.  
 thing, rēs, rēi, *f.*  
 think, pūto, āre, avi, atum.  
 this, hīc, haec, hoc.  
 throne, sōlium, ī, *n.*  
 through, per, *with acc.*  
 throw, jācio, ēre, jēci, jactum.  
 thus, ita.  
 thy, tuus, a, um.  
 time, tempus, ōris, *n.*  
 timid, tīmīdus, a, um.  
 tongue, lingua, ae, *f.*  
 torture, crūciātus, ūs, *m.*  
 touch, tango, ēre, tēgī, tactum.  
 tower, turris, is, *f.*  
 town, oppīdum, ī, *n.*  
 treason, prōdītio, ōnis, *f.*  
 tree, arbor, ōris, *f.*  
 Trojan, Trōjānus, ī, *m.*  
 Trojan, Trōjānus, a, um.  
 Troy, Trōja, ae, *f.*  
 true, vērus, a, um.  
 truly, vērē.  
 twins, gēmīnī, ōrum, *m. pl.*  
 tyrant, tŷrannus, ī, *m.*

## U.

unless, nīsi.  
 unmindful, immēmor, ōris.  
 unusual, Inūsītātus, a, um.  
 unwilling, to be, nōlo, nolle, nōlūi.  
 unworthy, indignus, a, um.  
 urge, hortor, āri, ātus, *dep.*  
 useful, ūtilis, e.

## V.

Verres, Verres, is, *m.*  
 verse, versus, ūs, *m.*  
 very, *rendered by the superl.*  
 victor, victor, ōris, *m.*  
 victory, victōria, ae, *f.*  
 virtue, virtūs, ūtis, *f.*  
 voice, vox, vōcis, *f.*

## W.

wage, gēro, ēre, gessi, gestum.  
 wage on, infēro, ferre, tūli, illā-  
 tum.  
 wakefulness, vīgīlantia, ae, *f.*  
 walk, ambūlo, āre, avi, atum.  
 wall, mūrus, ī, *m.*  
 walls (fortified), moenia, ium, *n.*  
*pl.*  
 wander, erro, āre, avi, atum.  
 war, bellum, ī, *n.*  
 wash, lāvo, āre, avi, atum.  
 water, āqua, ae, *f.*  
 wave, fluctus, ūs, *m.*  
 wave, unda, ae, *f.*  
 way, via, ae, *f.*  
 weariness, taedium, ī, *n.*  
 weep, weep over, fleo, ēre, ēvī,  
 ētum.  
 well, pūtēs, ī, *m.*  
 what, *interrog.*, quid?



what, *adj. pron.*, quī, quae, quod.  
 when, cum.  
 where, ubi.  
 whether—or, utrum—ān.  
 whether—or not, utrum—necne.  
 which-of-the-two, ūter, tra, trum.  
 who, which, quī, quae, quod.  
 who? which? quis, quae, quid?  
 whole, tōtus, a, um.  
 why, cūr.  
 wide, lātus, a, um.  
 wild beast, fēra, ae, f.  
 will, vōlo, velle, vōlūi.  
 wind, ventus, i, m.  
 wine, vīnum, i, n.  
 winter, hiems, ēmis, f.  
 wisdom, sāpientia, ae, f.  
 wise, sāpiens, entis.  
 wish; vōlo, velle, vōlūi.  
 wish for, opto, āre, avi, atum.  
 with, cum, *with ablat.*  
 withdraw, discēdo, ēre, cessī, cessum.  
 without, sīne, *with ablat.*

witness, testis, is, m. and f.  
 wolf, lūpus, i, m.  
 wonderful, mirificus, a, um.  
 wood, silva, ae, f.  
 wooden, lignēus, a, um.  
 word, verbum, i, n.  
 worse, dētērior, us, *compar. deg.*  
 worthy, dignus, a, um.  
 wound, vulnēro, āre, avi, atum.  
 wound, vulnus, ēris, n.  
 wretched, mīser, ēra, ērum.  
 write, scribo, ēre, ipsi, iptum.  
 writer, scriptor, ōris, m.

Y.

year, annus, i, m.  
 you, tū; vōs.  
 your, tuus, a, um (*strictly, thy*).  
 your, vester, tra, trum.

Z.

Zama, Zāma, ae, f.  
 Zeno, Zēno, ōnis, m.

THE



END.



# MODEL TEXT-BOOKS

FOR

*Schools, Academies, and Colleges.*

*CHASE & STUART'S CLASSICAL SERIES.*

COMPRISING

A First Latin Book,  
A Latin Grammar,  
A Latin Reader,  
Caesar's Commentaries,  
First Six Books of *Æneid*,  
Virgil's *Æneid*,  
Horace's Odes, Satires, and Epistles,  
Cicero De Senectute, et De Amicitia,  
Virgil's Eclogues and Georgics,  
Sallust's Catiline et Jugurtha,  
Cornelius Nepos,  
Cicero's Select Orations, Cicero De Officiis,  
Cicero's Tusculan Disputations,  
Cicero de Oratore, Juvenal,  
Terence, Tacitus,  
Ovid, Livy.

**A SERIES  
OF  
TEXT-BOOKS ON THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE.**

**By JOHN S. HART, LL.D.**

The Series comprises the following volumes, viz.:

**Language Lessons for Beginners,  
Elementary English Grammar,  
English Grammar and Analysis,  
First Lessons in Composition,  
Composition and Rhetoric,  
A Short Course in Literature,  
A Class-Book of Poetry.**

---

***Elements of Physical Geography.***

By EDWIN J. HOUSTON, A.M., Prof. of Physics in the Central High School of Philadelphia.

***Easy Lessons in Natural Philosophy.***

For Children. By EDWIN J. HOUSTON, A.M.

***Intermediate Lessons in Natural Philosophy.***

By Prof. EDWIN J. HOUSTON, A.M.

***Elements of Natural Philosophy.***

For Schools, Academies, etc. By EDWIN J. HOUSTON, A.M.

***Christian Ethics; or, The Science of the Life of Human Duty.***

A New Text-Book on Moral Science. By Rev. D. S. GREGORY, D.D., President of Lake Forest University.

***Practical Logic; or, The Art of Thinking.***

By Rev. D. S. GREGORY, D.D.

***A Hand-Book of Literature, English and American.***

By E. J. TRIMBLE, Prof. of Literature State Normal School, West Chester, Pa.

***Groesbeck's Practical Book-Keeping Series.***

By Prof. JOHN GROESBECK, Prin. of the Crittenden Commercial College. In Two Volumes, viz.:

COLLEGE EDITION, for Commercial Schools, Colleges, etc.

SCHOOL EDITION, for Schools and Academies.

***The Constitution of the United States.***

For Schools, with Questions under each Clause. By Prof. JOHN S. HART, LL.D.

***The Crittenden Commercial Arithmetic and Business Manual.*** New Edition, Sept., 1882.

Designed for the use of Teachers, Business Men, Academies, High Schools, and Commercial Colleges. By Prof. JOHN GROESBECK.

***An Elementary Algebra.***

A Text-Book for Schools and Academies. By JOSEPH W. WILSON, A.M., Professor of Mathematics in the Philadelphia Central High School.

***A Manual of Elocution and Reading.***

Founded on the Philosophy of the Human Voice. By EDWARD BROOKS, Ph.D., Prin. of State Normal School, Millersville, Pa.

***The Model Definer.***

A Book for Beginners, containing Definitions, Etymology, and Sentences as Models, exhibiting the correct use of Words. By A. C. WEBB.

***The Model Etymology.***

Containing Definitions, Etymology, Latin Derivatives, and Sentences as Models, and Analysis. With a Key containing the Analysis of every word which could present any difficulties to the learner. By A. C. WEBB.

***A Manual of Etymology.***

Containing Definitions, Etymology, Latin and Greek Derivatives, Sentences as Models, and Analysis. With a Key containing the Analysis of every word which could present any difficulties to the learner. By A. C. WEBB.

***The Model Speaker.***

Consisting of Exercises in Prose and Poetry, Suitable for Recitation, Declamation, Public Readings, etc. By Prof. PHILIP LAWRENCE.



***First Lessons in Physiology and Hygiene.***

By CHARLES K. MILLS, M.D.

***Anatomy, Physiology, and Hygiene.***

A Text-Book for Schools, Academies, Colleges, and Families.

By JOSEPH C. MARTINDALE, M.D.

***First Lessons in Natural Philosophy.***

For Beginners. By JOSEPH C. MARTINDALE, M.D.

***Elements of Mythology.*** For the use of Schools. By ELIZA ROBBINS.

***3000 Practice Words.***

By Prof. J. WILLIS WESTLAKE, A.M., State Normal School, Millersville, Pa. Contains lists of Familiar Words often Misspelled, Difficult Words, Homophonous Words, Words often Confounded, Rules for Spelling, etc. It is a book that every teacher wants.

***In the School-Room ;***

Or, CHAPTERS IN THE PHILOSOPHY OF EDUCATION. Gives the experience of nearly forty years spent in school-room work. By JOHN S. HART, LL.D.

***Meadows' Spanish and English Dictionary.***

In Two Parts: I. SPANISH AND ENGLISH. II. ENGLISH AND SPANISH. By F. C. MEADOWS, M.A.

***The Model Pocket Register and Grade-Book.***

A Roll-Book, Record, and Grade-Book combined. Adapted to all Grades of Classes, whether in College, Academy, Seminary, High or Primary School.

***The Model Roll-Book, No. 1,*** is so ruled as to show at a glance the record of a class for three months, allowing five weeks to each month, with spacing for weekly, monthly, and quarterly summary, and a blank space for remarks at the end of the quarter.

***The Model Roll-Book, No. 2,*** is arranged on the same general plan, as regards spacing, etc., but, in addition, the names of the studies generally pursued in schools are printed immediately following the name of the pupil, making it more convenient when it is desirable to have a record of all the studies pursued by a pupil brought together in one place.

 Specimen Sheets sent by Mail on Application.

### ***The Model School Diary.***

Designed as an aid in securing the co-operation of parents. It consists of a Record of the Attendance, Deportment, Recitations, etc., of the Scholar for every day. At the close of the week it is to be sent to the parent or guardian for his examination and signature.

### ***The Model Monthly Report.***

Similar to the Model School Diary, excepting that it is intended for a *Monthly* instead of a *Weekly* report of the Attendance, Recitations, etc., of the pupil.

### ***Manuals for Teachers.***

A Series of Hand-books comprising five volumes, which, it is believed, will prove a valuable contribution to the Art and Science of Teaching. Printed on the best quality of calendered paper, and handsomely bound.

- 1. On the Cultivation of the Senses.***
- 2. On the Cultivation of the Memory.***
- 3. On the Use of Words.***
- 4. On Discipline.***
- 5. On Class Teaching.***

### ***The Teacher.***

A Monthly Journal devoted to the interests of Teachers, Schools, and the Cause of Education in general. Subscription price, 50 cents per annum. Specimen copy sent free on application.

*We shall be gratified to have teachers correspond with us. We offer some of the best of Modern Text-Books, and shall be glad at any time to make liberal arrangements for the introduction of our books, or to exchange for others that do not give satisfaction. Send for our catalogue, and for descriptive circulars of any of our books of which you desire information. Please address*

**ELDREDGE & BROTHER,**

17 North Seventh Street,

**PHILADELPHIA.**



